

Your Owner's Manual

 Digital version available on the Internet

<http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals>



Tutorial videos

After reading in the following reference or the QR code, the website with the vehicle offer is displayed. By selecting the desired vehicle, the website with video instructions for selected vehicle functions is displayed.

 <http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals>



ŠKODA KAMIQ 11.2020
Angličtina/English
V1, R1, RoW, en_GB



658012720AD

OWNER'S MANUAL

ŠKODA KAMIQ



ŠKODA
SIMPLY CLEVER



Documentation of vehicle delivery

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Date of vehicle delivery ____ / ____ / ____

ŠKODA Partner
Stamp and signature of the vendor

I confirm that I have taken delivery of the vehicle in good condition, have received information on how to operate it correctly, and have had the terms of the warranty explained to me.
Signature of the customer

Does the vehicle have an extended warranty?

YES

NO

Limitations of the ŠKODA extended warranty^{a)}

Years: _____

or

km: _____

or

Miles: _____

^{a)} Depending on which comes first.



Reprinting, reproduction or translation, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2020

Vehicle owner

1. Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the official registration number

belongs to (Title, Name / Company)

Address:

Telephone:

ŠKODA Partner

Service consultant:

Telephone:

2. Vehicle owner

This vehicle with the official registration number

belongs to (Title, Name / Company)

Address:

Telephone:

ŠKODA Partner

Service consultant:

Telephone:



658012720AD

Table of Contents

1	Vehicle owner	27	Window - with electrical operation
5	About the Owner's Manual	29	Sunblind - with electrical operation
6	About the Owner's Manual	29	Sun visors
6	Tutorial videos	29	Boot lid - with manual operation
7	Explanations	29	Boot lid - with electrical control
7	Digital Instructions in Vehicle Infotainment	31	Unlocking the boot lid
7	Application Quick Start Guide	31	Seats, steering wheel and mirror
8	Vehicle overviews	31	Front seat - with manual operation
8	Front vehicle area	32	Front seat - with electrical operation
10	Rear vehicle area	32	Rear seats
11	Driver's seat	32	Park position of rear seat belts
11	Centre console and passenger seat	32	Headrests
12	Engine compartment	33	Front armrest
12	Warning lights	33	Rear armrest
12	Functionality	33	Steering wheel
12	Warning lights overview	34	Interior rear-view mirror
15	Correct and safe	34	Wing mirror
15	Introductory notes for correct use	36	Restraint systems and airbags
15	New vehicle or new parts	36	Seat belts
15	Regular checks	37	Child seat
15	Improper vehicle adjustments	38	Fasteners for child seats
15	Keep sensors and cameras functional	41	Airbags
16	Engine compartment	42	Key switch for the front passenger airbag
16	Handling operating fluids	43	Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers
16	12 volt vehicle battery	43	Exterior lighting
16	Use electrical sockets in the vehicle	45	COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME exterior lighting
16	Before your journey	45	Light Assist high-beam assist system
17	Sitting safely	46	Replace light bulbs
17	Correct belt webbing arrangement	47	Interior lighting
17	Correct steering wheel position	48	Interior ambient light
17	Securing children properly	48	Windscreen wipers and washers
18	Transporting objects safely	50	Heating and air conditioning system
18	Safe driving	50	Heating
19	Stop the vehicle safely!	50	Manual air conditioning
19	Exiting the vehicle	51	Climatronic automatic air conditioning system
19	Deviating weather conditions	53	Heated windscreen
19	Emergency call	53	Seat heating
20	After an accident	53	Heated steering wheel
22	Keys, locks and alarm system	54	Driver information system
22	Key	54	Analogue instrument cluster
22	Central locking	55	Digital instrument cluster
24	Keyless locking (KESSY)	57	Driving data
25	Alarm system	58	Speed limit warning
26	Doors, windows and boot lid	58	Vehicle status
26	Doors	59	Infotainment Swing
26	Child safety lock on the rear doors	59	Infotainment overview
27	Protective door strip	59	System
27	Window - with manual operation	60	Screen
		61	Infotainment keyboard
		62	Control centre
		62	Radio
		65	Media

67	Mobile device management	128	Economical driving style
68	Telephone	129	Towing a trailer
71	Wi-Fi	130	Towing eye and towing procedure
71	SmartLink	131	Brakes
		131	Handbrake
74	Infotainment Bolero	132	Driver assist systems
74	Infotainment overview	132	Braking and stabilising systems
74	System	133	Front Assist
75	Screen	134	Pedestrian detection system
76	Infotainment keyboard	134	Speed limiter
77	Control centre	135	Cruise control system
77	Radio	136	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
79	Media	138	Lane Assist
82	Mobile device management	139	Lane change assist system Side Assist
83	Telephone	140	Traffic sign recognition
86	Wi-Fi	141	Crew Protect Assist proactive occupant protection
86	SmartLink	141	Driver Alert fatigue detection assistant
89	Infotainment Amundsen	142	Park Assist systems
89	Infotainment overview	142	Park Pilot parking aid
89	System	143	Rear view camera
90	Screen	144	Rear Traffic Alert
91	Infotainment keyboard	144	Park steering assistant
92	Voice control		
94	Control Centre	146	Engine, exhaust system and fuel
94	Radio	146	Bonnet
97	Media	147	Engine oil
101	Images	148	Coolant
102	Mobile device management	149	Engine electronics
104	Telephone	149	Particle filter
106	Wi-Fi	149	Exhaust control system
108	SmartLink	149	Fuel filter
110	Navigation	150	Radiator blinds
		150	Fuel filler flap
115	Online Services	150	AdBlue
115	ŠKODA Connect	151	Petrol
115	ŠKODA Connect application	152	Diesel
116	User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services	153	CNG (compressed natural gas)
116	Setting personal data protection		
117	User management	156	12 volt vehicle battery and fuses
119	Personalisation	156	12 volt vehicle battery
119	Management of online services	157	Using the jump-starting cable
120	eSIM data connection	158	Fuses
120	Online System Update	158	Fuses in the dash panel
121	Shop	160	Fuses in the engine compartment
122	Information call		
122	Breakdown call	161	Wheels
123	Service schedules	161	Tyres and rims
123	Vehicle status report	162	All-season or winter tires
123	Remote access to the vehicle	162	Snow chains
		162	Spare and emergency spare wheel
124	Starting and driving	163	Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle
124	Starting with the key	164	Breakdown kit
124	Start at the push of a button	166	Tyre pressure
125	Starting issues	166	Tyre pressure monitor
125	START STOP	167	Wheel bolt cover caps
126	Manual gearbox	167	Full wheel frame
126	Automatic gearbox		
128	Vehicle driving mode		

4 Table of Contents

168 Storage space and interior equipment

- 168 Equipment in the boot
- 168 Emergency equipment
- 169 Tool kit
- 169 Storage compartment for the reflective vest
- 169 Fasteners in the boot
- 170 Bag hooks in the boot
- 170 Cargo elements in the luggage compartment
- 171 Storage net
- 171 Hook on the eyelet of the TOP TETHER system
- 171 Fastening nets
- 171 Storage pocket
- 172 Net partition
- 172 Double-sided floor covering
- 172 Rigid boot cover
- 172 Variable loading floor in the boot
- 173 Interior equipment front
- 174 Interior equipment rear
- 174 Car park ticket holder
- 174 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door
- 175 Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door
- 175 USB-connections
- 176 Hook on the centre body pillar
- 176 Glasses compartment
- 176 Card holder on the armrest
- 176 Storage compartment under the front seat
- 176 Storage compartment for an umbrella
- 177 Phonebox
- 177 Cup holder
- 178 Cup holder Easy Open
- 178 Multimedia holder
- 178 Waste container
- 178 Ashtray and cigarette lighter
- 178 Folding table
- 179 12-Volt power socket

179 Roof rack and hitch

- 179 Roof rack
- 179 Swivelling hitch

182 Maintaining and cleaning

- 182 Service events
- 182 Service work, adjustments and technical changes
- 183 Interior
- 184 Exterior
- 185 Ice scraper

186 Technical data and specifications

- 186 Requirements for the technical data
- 186 Vehicle identification data
- 186 Maximum permissible weights
- 187 Operating weight
- 187 Vehicle dimensions
- 188 Engine specifications
- 189 Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)

- 190 Personal data
- 190 Information about the radio systems in the vehicle
- 191 Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

193 Index

About the Owner's Manual

General points

This Owner's Manual applies to all **chassis variants** of the vehicle, including all **models** and **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that **not all the trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **illustrations** in these operating instructions are purely illustrative and are to be understood as general information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on the further development of all vehicles. It is therefore possible for changes to be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. The information contained in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be derived from the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual

Keeping environmental protection in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and vehicle maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes full information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available at the following places:

- ▶ On the ŠKODA web pages
- ▶ In the mobile application MyŠKODA
- ▶ In Infotainment Amundsen

<http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals>



Digital version of the Owner's Manual in Infotainment

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual can be displayed in the Infotainment in the menu **MENU** ▶  as follows.

Tutorial videos

After reading in the following reference or the QR code, the website with the vehicle offer is displayed. By selecting the desired vehicle, the website with video instructions for selected vehicle functions is displayed.

<http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals>



About the Owner's Manual

General points

This Owner's Manual applies to all **chassis variants** of the vehicle, including all **models** and **trim levels**.

All possible **trim levels** are described here without identifying them as special trims, model variants or market-dependent equipment. This means that **not all the trim components** described in this Owner's Manual are available in your vehicle.

The **illustrations** in these operating instructions are purely illustrative and are to be understood as general information. The illustrations may differ from your vehicle.

ŠKODA AUTO is constantly working on the further development of all vehicles. It is therefore possible for changes to be made at any time to the scope of delivery in terms of shape, equipment and technology. The information contained in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

No legal claims can therefore be derived from the technical data, illustrations and information in this Owner's Manual.

Digital version of the Owner's Manual

Keeping environmental protection in mind, the printed Owner's Manual only contains the most important information regarding vehicle operation and vehicle maintenance.

The digital version of the Owner's Manual includes full information regarding vehicle operation.

The digital version is available at the following places:

- ▶ On the ŠKODA web pages
- ▶ In the mobile application MyŠKODA

 <http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals>



Tutorial videos

After reading in the following reference or the QR code, the website with the vehicle offer is displayed. By selecting the desired vehicle, the website with video instructions for selected vehicle functions is displayed.

 <http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals>



Tutorial videos

Tutorial videos

After reading in the following reference or the QR code, the website with the vehicle offer is displayed. By selecting the desired vehicle, the website with video instructions for selected vehicle functions is displayed.

 <http://go.skoda.eu/video-manuals>



Explanations

Terms used

- “Specialist garage”** - A workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.
- “ŠKODA Service Partner”** - A workshop that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to perform service work on ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.
- “ŠKODA Partner”** - A company that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its distribution partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Text notes

- “Press”** - short press (e.g. a button) within 1 second
- “Hold”** - long press (e.g. a button) for more than 1 second

Direction indications

All direction indications, such as “left”, “right”, “front”, “rear”, relate to the forwards direction of travel of the vehicle.

⚠ DANGER

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, will result in death or serious injury.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in death or serious injury.

⚠ CAUTION

Texts marked with this symbol indicate dangerous situations which, if the safety instructions are not observed, could result in minor or moderate injury.

ⓘ NOTICE

Texts with this symbol indicate situations which, if the corresponding instructions are not observed, will result in damage to the vehicle.

i Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Digital Instructions in Vehicle Infotainment

Application Quick Start Guide

Interactive images

In the pictures with the outside of the vehicle and the inside of the vehicle, there are touch points. Tapping a touch point displays a menu with topics or a detailed image.

Symbols

Information about symbols that can be shown on the instrument cluster display. By tapping the symbol, a detailed description is displayed.

Topics

The instruction content is organized according to topics.



Top bar of the displayed topic

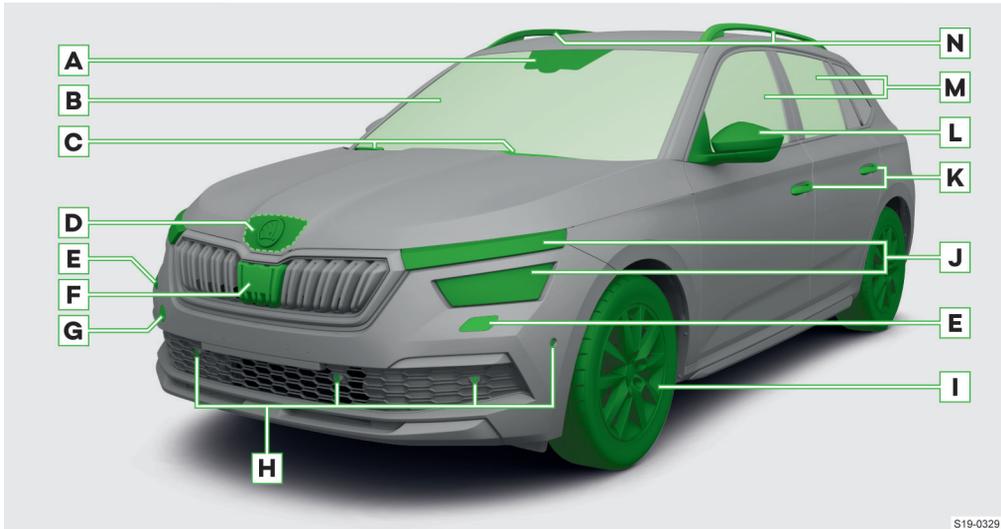
- A** Title of the topic
- B** Type of information displayed / display menu with information
- C** Text search

About the instructions

Language selection for instructions and updates.

Vehicle overviews

Front vehicle area



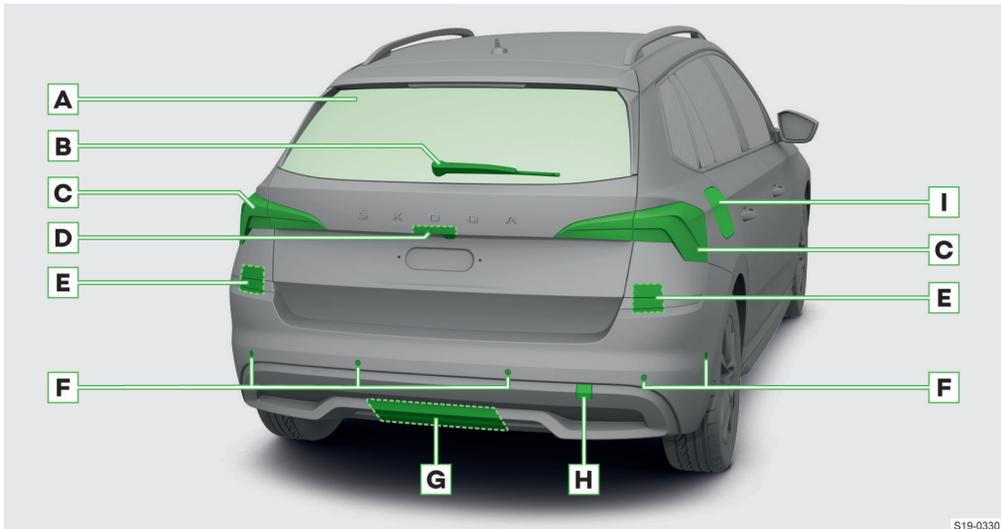
S19-0329

- A** Under the windscreen (depending on the vehicle equipment):
 - ▶ Camera for assist systems
 - ▶ Light sensor for automatic driving light circuit » [page 43](#)
 - ▶ Rain sensor for automatic wiping » [page 48](#)
- B** Windscreen - heating » [page 53](#)
- C** Windscreen wiper - operation » [page 48](#)
- D** Bonnet release lever (under the flap) » [page 146](#)
- E** Headlamp cleaning system » [page 48](#)
- F** Front radar sensor for assist systems
- G** Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » [page 130](#)
- H** Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems
- I** Wheels:
 - ▶ Tyres and rims » [page 161](#)
 - ▶ Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » [page 163](#)
 - ▶ Breakdown kit » [page 164](#).
 - ▶ Tyre pressure » [page 166](#)
 - ▶ Tyre pressure monitor » [page 166](#)
- J** Headlights (depending on vehicle equipment):
 - ▶ Operation » [page 43](#)
 - ▶ Light Assist high-beam assist system » [page 45](#)
- K** Door handles (depending on vehicle equipment):
 - ▶ Open door » [page 26](#)
 - ▶ Keyless locking (KESY) » [page 24](#).
- L** Exterior mirror - operation » [page 34](#)
- M** Side door windows - operation » [page 28](#).
- N** Roof rack » [page 179](#)

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

- › Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » [page 15](#).

Rear vehicle area



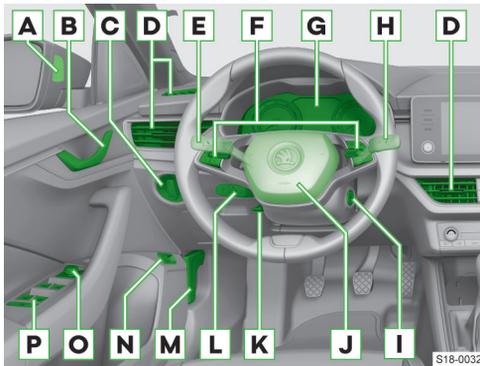
S19-0330

- A** Rear window - heating » [page 53](#)
- B** Rear window wiper and washer - Operation » [page 48](#)
- C** Tail lights:
 - ▶ Operation » [page 43](#)
 - ▶ Replace light bulbs » [page 46](#)
- D** Boot lid handle (depending on the vehicle equipment).
 - ▶ Manually operated boot lid » [page 29](#)
 - ▶ Electrically operated boot lid » [page 30](#)
 - ▶ Camera for assist systems
- E** Radar sensors for assist systems (in the bumper)
- F** Ultrasonic sensors for assist systems
- G** Swivelling tow coupling » [page 179](#)
- H** Cover for screw-in towing eye socket » [page 130](#)
- I** Fuel filler flap (depending on vehicle equipment):
 - ▶ Opening » [page 150](#)
 - ▶ Sticker with tyre pressure values » [page 166](#)
 - ▶ Sticker with prescribed fuel
 - ▶ Ice scraper
 - ▶ Filler neck of the AdBlue® tank » [page 150](#)
 - ▶ CNG filler neck » [page 154](#)

Functionality of the sensors and cameras

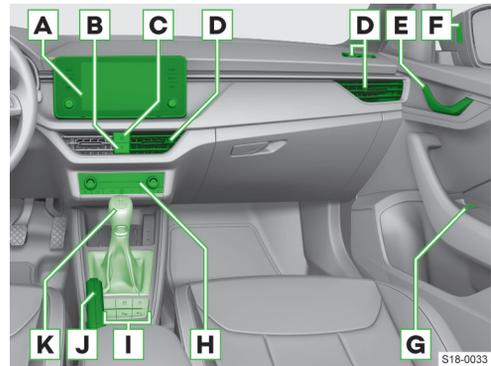
- › Keep the sensors and cameras for the assist systems clean » [page 15](#).

Driver's seat



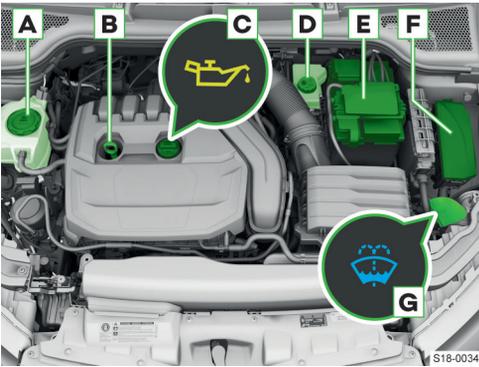
- A** Side Assist lane change assist system indicator light » [page 139](#)
- B** Door opening lever » [page 26](#)
- C** Light switch » [page 43](#)
- D** Air outlet nozzle
- E** Control lever (depending on vehicle equipment):
 - ▶ Turn signal and main beam » [page 43](#)
 - ▶ Speed regulating system » [page 136](#)
 - ▶ Speed limiter » [page 134](#)
 - ▶ High beam assist system » [page 46](#)
- F** Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel » [page 33](#)
- G** Depending upon vehicle equipment:
 - ▶ Analogue instrument cluster » [page 54](#)
 - ▶ Digital instrument cluster » [page 55](#)
- H** Operating lever:
 - ▶ Windscreen wipers and washers » [page 48](#)
 - ▶ Information system » [page 55](#)
- I** Depending upon vehicle equipment:
 - ▶ Ignition lock » [page 124](#)
 - ▶ Starter button » [page 124](#)
- J** Steering wheel with horn/with driver's front air-bag » [page 41](#)
- K** Safety lever for steering wheel adjustment » [page 34](#)
- L** Operation of the automatic distance control » [page 137](#)
- M** Bonnet release lever » [page 146](#)
- N** Button for the electric boot lid » [page 30](#)
- O** Exterior mirror operation » [page 34](#)
- P** Window operation » [page 28](#).

Centre console and passenger seat



- A** Infotainment (depending on vehicle equipment):
 - ▶ Amundsen » [page 89](#)
 - ▶ Bolero » [page 74](#)
 - ▶ Swing » [page 59](#)
- B** Central locking system » [page 23](#)
- C** Button for hazard warning light system » [page 43](#)
- D** Air outlet nozzle
- E** Door opening lever » [page 26](#)
- F** Side Assist lane change assist system indicator light » [page 139](#)
- G** Window operation in the passenger door » [page 28](#)
- H** Operation (depending on vehicle equipment):
 - ▶ Heating » [page 50](#)
 - ▶ Manual air conditioning » [page 51](#).
 - ▶ Climatronic » [page 51](#)
- I** Keys (depending on vehicle equipment):
 - ▶ START-STOP » [page 125](#)
 - ▶ Park Pilot » [page 142](#)
 - ▶ Park Assist » [page 144](#)
 - ▶ Driving mode selection » [page 128](#)
- J** Parking brake » [page 131](#)
- K** Depending upon vehicle equipment:
 - ▶ Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) » [page 126](#)
 - ▶ Selector lever (automatic gearbox) » [page 126](#)

Engine compartment



- A** Coolant expansion reservoir » page 148
- B** Engine oil dipstick » page 147
- C** Engine oil filler opening » page 147
- D** Brake fluid reservoir » page 131
- E** 12 volt vehicle battery » page 156
- F** Fuse box » page 160
- G** Windscreen washer fluid reservoir » page 49

Warning lights

Functionality

⚠ WARNING

Disregarding the lighting up of the warning lights and the associated messages on the display of the instrument cluster can lead to accidents, serious injuries or damage to the vehicle.

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

The illumination of some of the indicator lights may be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the instrument cluster display.

Additional indicator lights

The additional indicator light will also light up in the display along with some of the indicator lights:

⚠ - Hazard

⚠ - Warning

Warning lights overview

After switching on the ignition, some indicator lights light up briefly as a function test of the vehicle systems. If the tested systems are in order, the respective indicator lights go out a few seconds after the ignition is switched on or after the engine has been started.

For further details » page 12, *Functionality*.

Symbol	Meaning
	Indicates a warning together with another warning light » page 12.
	Unfastened seat belts at the front and rear » page 36.
	12-volt vehicle battery is not charging » page 156.
	Along with ⚡ - Engine fault » page 148, » page 157.
	Engine oil pressure too low » page 147.
	Engine oil level too low » page 147.
	Coolant level is too low » page 148.
	Coolant temperature too high » page 148.
	Brake fluid level is too low » page 131.
	Together with 🚗 - Brake system and ABS faulty » page 133.

Symbol	Meaning
	Parking brake on » page 131.
	Illuminates - Power assisted steering faulty » page 34.
	Flashing - Steering lock faulty » page 34.
	Automatic gearbox impaired » page 127.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 127.
	AdBlue® level too low » page 151.
	AdBlue® system impaired » page 151.
	Warning if there is a risk of a collision » page 133.
	ACC does not decelerate sufficiently » page 137.
	Indicates a warning along with another warning light » page 12.
	The fuel supply has reached the reserve area. » page 152, » page 153.
	Windscreen washer fluid level too low » page 49.
	Bulb faulty » page 45.
	Rear fog light switched on » page 44.
	Engine oil level too high or engine oil level sensor impaired » page 147.
	Clogged particle filter » page 149.
	ABS faulty » page 133.
	Automatic gearbox overheated » page 127.
	Automatic gearbox impaired » page 127.
	Water in the diesel fuel filter » page 149.
	AdBlue® system impaired » page 151.
	AdBlue® level too low » page 151.

Symbol	Meaning
	Tyre pressure control system faulty » page 167.
	Tyre pressure change » page 162, » page 166.
	Illuminates - Power assisted steering faulty » page 34.
	Flashing - Steering lock not unlocked » page 34.
	Flashing - Steering lock faulty » page 34.
	KESY - starting problem » page 125.
	KESY - no key found » page 25.
	Shock absorber faulty » page 128.
EPC	Petrol engine control faulty » page 149.
	Emission control system faulty » page 149.
	illuminates , if relevant, does not illuminate after switching on the ignition - Diesel preheating system faulty » page 149.
	Flashing - Diesel engine control faulty » page 149.
	Front passenger airbag switched on » page 42.
ON 	flashes together with OFF  - Key switch for airbag deactivation is faulty » page 42.
OFF 	Front passenger airbag switched off » page 42.
	Airbag system faulty » page 42.
	Crew Protect Assist faulty » page 141.
	Illuminates for 4 seconds and then flashes - Airbag or belt tensioner deactivated with diagnostic device » page 42.
	Ball rod not locked » page 180.
	ASR deactivated » page 133.
	Illuminates - ESC or ASR faulty » page 133.
	Flashing - ESC or ASR is engaged » page 132.

14 Warning lights › Warning lights overview

Symbol	Meaning
	Front Assist deactivated » page 134, » page 134.
	ACC not available » page 138.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 139.
	Lane Assist intervenes » page 139.
	Turn signal light, left » page 43, » page 45.
	Rear seat belt fastened » page 36.
	Turn signal light, right » page 43, » page 45.
	Trailer turn signal light » page 45.
	Front fog lights switched on » page 44.
	The selector lever is locked » page 126.
	Natural gas operation » page 154.
	Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 139.
	Lane Assist is activated and ready to intervene » page 139.
	ACC controls the driving speed » page 137.
	ACC controls the driving speed » page 137.
	The cruise control system controls the driving speed » page 136.
	Low outside temperature » page 18.
	High beam or flasher activated » page 43.
	Unoccupied rear seat » page 36.
	Rear seat belt not fastened » page 36.
	A rear seat belt is not fastened » page 36.
	A rear seat belt is fastened » page 36.
	A rear seat belt is fastened » page 36.

Symbol	Meaning
	High beam Assist System switched on » page 46.
	No light is switched on » page 43.
	AdBlue® level too low » page 151.
	AdBlue® system impaired. » page 151.
	Shock absorber faulty » page 128.
	Service event » page 182.
	Natural gas system test » page 154.
	Engine was switched off automatically by START-STOP » page 125.
	Engine was not automatically switched off via START-STOP » page 125.
	Speed limiter faulty » page 135.
	Speed limiter activated » page 134.
	ACC not available » page 138.
	ACC activated » page 136.
	Cruise control system faulty » page 136.
	Cruise control activated » page 136.
	Front Assist deactivated » page 134, » page 134.
	Front Assist is started » page 133.
	Safety distance too small » page 133.
	Consumption-friendly driving » page 129.
	Break recommendation » page 141.
	Driving mode Normal » page 128.
	Driving mode Eco » page 128.
	Driving mode Individual » page 128.
	Driving mode Sport » page 128.

Correct and safe

Introductory notes for correct use

- ▶ Read this Owner's Manual carefully, as proceeding in accordance with this manual is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle. This Owner's Manual should therefore always be in the vehicle.
- ▶ When using the vehicle, the generally binding legal provisions that are specific to the country must be observed. Such as those for transporting children, switching off airbags, using tyres, road traffic and the like.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum permissible weights and loads.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum permissible roof load.
- ▶ Use the specified fuel and operating fluids.
- ▶ Drive on roads that meet the technical vehicle parameters. Obstacles that exceed the ground clearance of the vehicle » [page 187](#) can damage the vehicle when driving over them.
- ▶ Care must be taken during operations related to operation, maintenance and self-help to avoid damage to the vehicle or injury. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.
- ▶ All work on the vehicle's safety systems may only be carried out by a specialist garage. This concerns e.g. the seat belts or the airbag system.
- ▶ When using accessories, please note the instructions in the accessory manufacturer's instruction manual. These include child seats, roof racks, compressors etc.
- ▶ Please note the service intervals.

New vehicle or new parts

New vehicle - Running in the engine

Driving style during the first 1500 km determines the quality of the engine run-in process.

- ▶ During the first 1000 km, rev the engine to max. 3/4 of the highest permissible engine speed and avoid using a trailer.
- ▶ Over the next 500 km, the engine speed can be slowly increased.

Depending on driving style and operating conditions, the engine consumes some oil, up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Consumption may be higher over the next 5000 km.

New brake pads

New brake pads do not provide the optimum braking effect during the first 200 km, they have to be worn in first. Therefore, drive very carefully.

New tyres

New tyres do not have optimum grip for the first 500 km. Therefore, drive very carefully.

Regular checks

What should be taken into account before driving?

A vehicle with technical defects can increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

Eliminate any defects before driving. If required, seek the help of a specialised garage.

Pay special attention to the following points:

- ▶ Is the tyre undamaged?
- ▶ Is the tyre tread sufficient?
- ▶ Is the tyre pressure sufficient?
- ▶ Do the headlamps, brake and turn signals work?
- ▶ Is the windscreen in good condition?
- ▶ Is the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level OK?
- ▶ Is the air intake in the engine compartment free from obstruction?
- ▶ Are the air outlet nozzles or air intake in front of the windscreen free from obstruction?
- ▶ Are the windscreen wiper and washer system and windscreen wiper blades functional?
- ▶ Is the windscreen washer fluid level sufficient?
- ▶ Are the windscreen wiper blades in good condition?
- ▶ Are all seatbelt system components in good working order? Are the seatbelts clean and have the buckles been unclogged?
- ▶ Is the spoiler working properly?
- ▶ Are parts and components of the vehicle still visibly attached?
- ▶ Are there no oil stains or other operating fluids under the vehicle?

Improper vehicle adjustments

Improper changes and maintenance can cause malfunctions and affect safety-relevant and other functions of the vehicle.

- ▶ Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- ▶ Never cover the engine with additional insulation material, e.g. with a cover.

Keep sensors and cameras functional

Some functions of your vehicle are supported by sensors and cameras inside and outside the vehicle.

Accessories additionally installed on the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the functioning of the sensors and cameras.

- ▶ Do not cover or stick over the sensors and cameras and keep them clean.

- ▶ If you suspect damaged sensors or cameras, seek the help of a specialist company.

Engine compartment

Before opening the engine compartment flap

Risk of scalding! Do not open the engine compartment flap if steam or coolant comes out of the engine compartment.

- ▶ Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
- ▶ Remove the ignition key. On vehicles with a keyless locking system, open the driver's door.

When working in the engine compartment

- ▶ Keep children away from the engine compartment.
- ▶ Do not touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan can turn itself on, even when the ignition is off.
- ▶ Do not touch electrical cables. Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, especially on the 12 Volt vehicle battery.
- ▶ Do not smoke near the vicinity of the engine and refrain from handling open flames or sparks.
- ▶ If you need to work in the engine compartment with the engine running, be mindful of rotating engine parts and electrical equipment.
- ▶ Do not leave any objects in the engine compartment.

Handling operating fluids

Your vehicle uses various operating fluids to operate that can affect health or the environment when they are emitted. These are fuel, oils, battery acid from the 12-volt vehicle battery, coolant and brake fluid or AdBlue®.

- ▶ Only use operating fluids outdoors or in well-ventilated areas. If required, wear protective equipment.
- ▶ Do not use or check operating fluids with the engine running.
- ▶ In the event of contact with operating fluids, wash affected areas with warm water. If required, seek medical help.
- ▶ The leaked engine oil in the engine compartment can cause a fire, so wipe it off with a cloth.
- ▶ Store cloths soiled by brake fluids in a well-ventilated place until disposal. Cloths with residues of engine oil can ignite and cause a fire.

12 volt vehicle battery

Handling the 12-volt vehicle battery

The battery acid of the 12-volt vehicle battery is very caustic. Improper handling of the 12 volt vehicle battery can cause an explosion, fire, chemical burns or poisoning!

- ▶ When handling the 12-volt vehicle battery, eye and skin protection must be worn.
- ▶ Do not tilt the 12-volt vehicle battery, as it may leak battery acid.
- ▶ If battery acid comes into contact with skin, wash the affected areas with water for a few minutes. Seek medical assistance without delay.
- ▶ Do not charge a frozen or thawed 12-volt vehicle battery. Replace a frozen 12-volt vehicle battery.
- ▶ Do not use a damaged 12-volt vehicle battery.
- ▶ Short circuit! The battery poles of the 12-volt vehicle battery are not connected.

Use electrical sockets in the vehicle

Improper handling of the sockets may lead to life-threatening electric shock or a fire.

- ▶ The sockets can become warm during operation. Do not touch warm sockets.
- ▶ Protect sockets from liquids.
- ▶ If moisture does manage to get into the power socket, completely dry out the socket before re-use.
- ▶ Do not insert any objects into the socket contacts.

Before your journey

Adults and children, cargo and objects - everything has its place in the vehicle. Observe the following instructions so that all occupants are protected in the best possible way in the event of an accident.

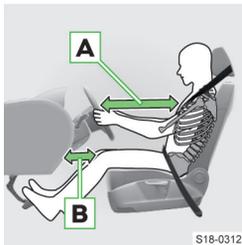
Before you go

- ▶ Ensure that you have a good view of outside the vehicle. Attach external devices (e.g. navigation system) so that they do not restrict the view externally.
- ▶ Adjust the rearview mirrors.
- ▶ Close all doors and the engine compartment and boot flap.
- ▶ Take up the correct sitting position, adjust the seats correctly and fasten the seat belt properly. Ensure that passengers do likewise. Always leave the seat belt on while driving.
- ▶ Only one person can be secured with a seat belt.
- ▶ Make sure that the seat belts are not trapped, e.g. in the door or in the seat.
- ▶ Check seat belts, their locks and attachment points for damage.

Sitting safely

For the safety of the occupants and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed:

- ▶ Stand the backrests upright. If the front passenger seat backrest has been folded forward, only the seat behind the driver's seat may be used for transporting passengers.
- ▶ Engage the rear seat backrests correctly.
- ▶ Adjust the height-adjustable headrest so that the top of the headrest is as close as possible to the top of the head.
- ▶ On the occupied rear seat, the headrest should not be in the lower position although the upper edge of the headrest should be at the same height as the top of the head.
- ▶ Keep your feet in the footwell.
- ▶ Use the entire seat.
- ▶ Do not lean forward or sit to the side.
- ▶ Do not hold your limbs out the window.



S18-0312

- › Adjust the driver's seat in the longitudinal direction so that the pedals can be fully pushed through with slightly bent legs.
- › Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance **A** between the steering wheel and sternum is at least 25

cm.

- › For vehicles with driver's knee airbag, adjust the driver's seat longitudinally so that the distance **B** from the legs to the dash panel in the area of the knee airbag is at least 6 cm.
- › Adjust the angle of the backrest so that the steering wheel can be reached at the top with your arms slightly bent.
- › Move the passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a minimum distance of 25 cm from the dash panel.

Correct belt webbing arrangement



S18-0315

The webbing arrangement is extremely important for the seat belts to offer the best possible protection.

- ▶ The shoulder strap must run over the middle of the shoulder, must never run over the neck, and must lie firmly against the body (it must not run over loose layers of clothing).
- ▶ The lap belt part must be placed in front of the pelvis and fit tightly.
- ▶ In pregnant women, the lap belt part must be as low as possible on the pelvis, so that no pressure is exercised on the abdomen.
- ▶ The webbing must not be pinched or twisted and rub against sharp edges.
- ▶ The webbing must not pass over solid or fragile objects in clothing, such as a key ring, etc.
- ▶ The tongue may only be inserted into the buckle of the associated seat.
- ▶ The webbing must be tight. Therefore, do not attach clamps or similar items to the webbing for adjusting the seat belt according to body size.

Correct steering wheel position



S20-0005

- ▶ Hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position. Otherwise, you may experience serious injury to the arms, hands and head when deploying the airbag.

Securing children properly

- ▶ Do not carry a child on your lap, and secure the child and yourself with a seat belt.
- ▶ Only transport children in a suitable child seat » [page 38](#).

Children under 150 cm tall will not be properly protected without a child seat. Children that have been inadequately secured can be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident or a sudden manoeuvre. You can cause life-threatening injuries to yourself and other occupants.

If children lean forward or assume a wrong sitting position while driving, they are more likely to be injured in the event of an accident. This is especially true for children who are carried in the passenger seat - when the airbag system triggers, they can be seriously injured or killed!

A child that has been incorrectly secured in the wrong sitting position - endangered by the side airbag



The child should not be in the deployment area of the side airbag.

S18-0110

A child that has been properly secured in a child seat



There must be enough room between the child and the exit area of the side airbag for the side airbag to offer the best possible protection.

S18-0111

Transporting objects safely

When moving heavy objects, there is a shift in emphasis. Thus, the driving behaviour of the vehicle changes.

- ▶ Adjust driving speed and driving style to this changed driving behaviour.

Unsecured or misplaced items may be thrown around in the event of an accident or sudden manoeuvre. There is a risk of serious injury and loss of control of the vehicle!

In a rear-end collision at 50 km/h unsecured objects are thrown forward with up to 50 times their weight. A 1.5 litre water bottle is thrown with up to 75 kg.

- ▶ Transport objects securely.
- ▶ Stow objects so they do not hinder the driver. Keep the driver footwell clear.
- ▶ Stow small items in the storage compartments.
- ▶ Do not leave lockable storage compartments open.
- ▶ Do not let items protrude out of the slots. This note does not apply to bottles in bottle trays.

- ▶ Do not place any objects on the dash panel or on the luggage compartment cover.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum permissible load of fasteners and shelves.
- ▶ Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it, so that it cannot slip.
- ▶ Place heavy objects in the luggage compartment as far forward as possible.

Safe driving

Introductory notes

- ▶ Pay attention when you are driving! As a driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.
- ▶ Always adjust driving speed to the road conditions as well as the traffic and weather conditions.

Lights up when the outside temperature is low ❄ lights up in the instrument cluster.

Paying attention to warning signals

The driver information system warns you with indicator lights and messages in the event of any faults.

Failure to follow the warnings may increase the risk of accidents and injuries.

- ▶ If the vehicle issues a warning signal, then park the vehicle safely and follow the information in the instrument cluster, and in this Owner's Manual.

Use assistance systems

The assistance systems are only for support and do not absolve you from your responsibility for driving the vehicle.

The assistance systems are subject to physical and technical limitations. Therefore, in certain situations, system reactions may be perceived as undesirable or delayed.

- ▶ Stay alert and be ready to intervene.
- ▶ Familiarise yourself with the assistance systems, their limitations and operating conditions.
- ▶ Activate, deactivate and adjust the assistance systems so that you have full control of the vehicle in any traffic situation.

Driving with a substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel

A substitute spare wheel or emergency wheel is only used to reach the nearest specialist garage.

- ▶ Inflate the wheel with the max. prescribed inflation pressure.
- ▶ Follow the instructions on the warning label on the rim.
- ▶ Do not cover the warning sign.
- ▶ Avoid full accelerations, strong braking and fast cornering.
- ▶ Do not drive with more than one mounted spare wheel.

- ▶ Avoid using snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.

Driving with a loaded roof rack

When transporting objects on the roof rack, the vehicle's driving behaviour changes.

- ▶ Adapt your speed and driving style to this.

Towing a trailer

The vehicle's handling characteristics change with a trailer. The assistance systems may behave differently.

- ▶ Drive more slowly, excessive speed can lead to loss of control of the vehicle.
- ▶ Keep a larger distance from the vehicle in front.
- ▶ Do not exceed the max. vertical load and the permissible trailer load.

Driving through water

There must be no water ingress into the vehicle systems e.g. into the engine's air intake system!

- ▶ Therefore, determine the water depth before driving through water. The water level must not exceed the lower edge of the lower beam.
- ▶ Drive at max. walking speed. Otherwise, a wave may form in front of the vehicle, increasing the water level.
- ▶ Never stop in the water, do not drive backwards and never stop the engine.

Is something wrong?

- ▶ Pay attention to changes in vehicle handling.
- ▶ If in doubt about safety, stop driving and seek the help of a specialist garage.
- ▶ Unusual vibrations or the vehicle 'pulling' to the side may indicate a puncture.
- ▶ If tyre pressure loss is very quick, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.
- ▶ Immediately remove foreign bodies stuck in the tyre tread.
- ▶ Do not remove foreign objects that have penetrated into the tyre. Check the tyre pressure and seek the help of a specialised garage.
- ▶ Immediately remove any objects jammed under the floor of the vehicle. These can damage the vehicle or ignite and cause a fire.

Stop the vehicle safely!

A vehicle that has not been secured may roll away and cause accidents.

- ▶ For parking, look for a place with suitable ground. Do not park the vehicle on flammable materials such as dried leaves, spilt fuel. Hot vehicle parts can cause a fire.

Carry out the following activities in the specified order when parking.

- › Stop the vehicle and keep the brake pedal depressed.
- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- › For vehicles with an automatic gearbox, put the selector lever in the **P** position.
- › Turn off the engine.
- › For vehicles with manual transmission, engage 1st gear or reverse gear.
- › Release the brake pedal.

Exiting the vehicle

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle!

- ▶ Children may injure themselves when handling the seats, releasing the parking brake etc.
- ▶ In emergency situations, children are not able to leave the vehicle on their own or help themselves.
- ▶ At very high or very low temperatures, there is danger to life!
- ▶ When locking the vehicle, the SAFE function switches on. As a result, no doors or windows can be opened from the inside. Turn off the SAFE function if people are left behind in the locked vehicle » page 22.

Deviating weather conditions

If you wish to operate your vehicle in countries with different weather conditions from those specified, please contact a ŠKODA partner. They will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage (e.g. coolant, 12 volt vehicle battery replacement, etc.).

Emergency call

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Availability of a mobile network is indispensable for establishing a connection to the emergency number.

⚠ WARNING

This emergency service is only available in some countries.

⚠ WARNING

If the vehicle is located in an area without a functioning emergency call system infrastructure, no vehicle data shall be transmitted to the emergency call centre.

Functionality

After the start of the conversation, the emergency call centre also contains information as to the accident location and the severity of the accident, the number of occupants with seatbelts on and the vehicle identification number (VIN).

Once the connection has been established, communication with the emergency call centre takes place via the loudspeaker and microphone installed in the vehicle.

Serious accident - automatic call

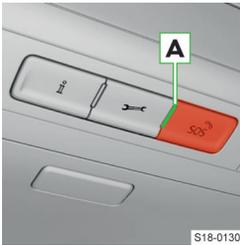
In the event of an accident where the airbag or belt tensioner activates, a call is automatically started with the emergency call centre.

The automatic call to the emergency call centre is also started after the Emergency Assist assistant system has intervened.

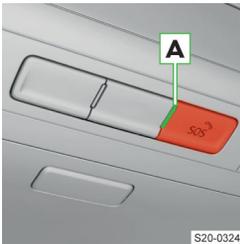
Minor accident - call option

The Infotainment screen displays the option to set up a connection to the emergency call centre or breakdown service.

Indicator light



Version 1



Version 2

The system status is displayed after the ignition is switched on, by the illumination of warning lamp **A**.

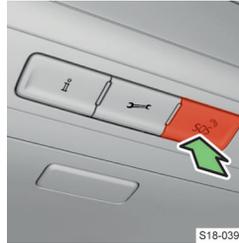
- ▶ Green - lit up - the system is functional
- ▶ Green - flashing - a call is being made to the emergency call centre
- ▶ Red - lit up - there is a system failure, immediately seek the help of a specialist garage
- ▶ Not lit up - the system is out of order due to a long term unavailable mobile network, if this circumstance persists, the system will require the assistance of a specialist garage

⚠ WARNING

If there is a system fault, no emergency call is possible.

Operation

Manual call



Version 1



Version 2

- › Keep the SOS button pressed down.
- › Confirm the connection to the emergency call centre in the Infotainment screen.
- › To cancel the connection to the emergency call centre before starting the call, press the SOS button again or confirm the cancellation of the connection in the Infotainment screen.

Starting a manual conversation can then be used, for example, if you also report an accident in which you are not directly involved.

After an accident

What to do after an accident

Where possible, please observe the following instructions:

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- › Put on the reflective vest.
- › In the case of natural gas vehicles, remove any objects that spark or set fire to the vehicle (e.g. put out cigarettes, etc.).
- › Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- › Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
- › Report the accident to the emergency services. If it is a natural gas vehicle, inform the emergency services.
- › Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

Safety systems

After an accident, the safety systems of the vehicle, e.g. seatbelts and airbag system, may be out of action.

- ▶ Have the vehicle's safety systems checked by a specialist garage, even if no load or trip has occurred.
- ▶ Have damaged, loaded or triggered components of the safety systems replaced by a specialist garage.

What to do in the event of a fire

Where possible, please observe the following instructions:

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Turn on the hazard warning lights.
- › Put on the reflective vest.
- › Set up the warning triangle to warn other road users.
- › Stay at a safe distance from the vehicle, along with any passengers.
- › Report the fire to the emergency services. If it is a natural gas vehicle, inform the emergency services.
- › Wait for the emergency services to arrive.

⚠ WARNING

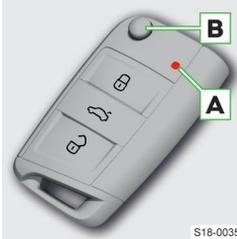
If it concerns a natural gas vehicle, follow the instructions below:

- ▶ Do not try to extinguish the fire yourself.
- ▶ Do not stand close to the burning vehicle.

Keys, locks and alarm system

Key

Key Overview



-  Locking the vehicle
-  Operating the boot lid
-  Unlocking the vehicle
- A** Battery status warning light
- B** Locking button for folding the key bit in/out

ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Protect the key from moisture and strong vibrations.
- ▶ Keep the grooves in the key clean.

ⓘ The effective range of the key signal is about 30 m. The effective range can be reduced, e.g. due to signal interference from other transmitters.

Troubleshooting

The battery in the key is almost empty

- ▶ After pressing a button on the key, the warning light does not flash.

Or:

- ▶ A message stating it is necessary to change the battery will be displayed.
- › Replace the battery » [page 22](#).

The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked with the remote control

There may be the following reasons:

- ▶ The battery in the key is empty.
- › Replace the battery » [page 22](#).
- ▶ The key is not synchronized.

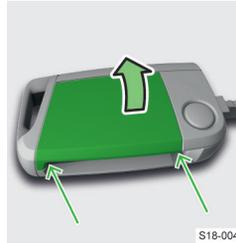
Synchronize the key as follows:

- › Press any button on the key.
- › Unlock the door within 1 minute with the key via the locking cylinder » [page 24](#).

ⓘ If necessary, the key must be synchronized if a favoured button on the key has been repeatedly pressed outside of the effective range of the remote control.

Changing the key battery

The new battery must comply with the specification of the original battery.



- › Fold out the key bit.
- › Release the battery cover with your thumbnail or by inserting a flat-head screwdriver at the marked points.
- › Open the battery cover.



- › Remove the battery.
- › Press any button on the remote key to reset the key.
- › Insert the new battery.
- › Fit the battery cover and press until it clicks into place.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death!

If the battery is swallowed, serious or even fatal injuries can result from burns in the digestive tract.

- ▶ Always keep children away from the vehicle key and batteries.
- ▶ If the battery is swallowed, seek medical help immediately.

Central locking

Functionality

Central locking system

The system unlocks and locks all doors, the fuel filler flap and the boot lid at the same time.

Unlock indicator: double flashing of the indicator lights.

Lock indicator: single flashing of the indicator lights.

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then it will start flashing regularly at longer intervals.

ⓘ If none of the doors or the boot lid is opened within 45 seconds of unlocking, the vehicle automatically locks again.

SAFE function

Depending on the equipment, the central locking system can include the SAFE function.

The SAFE function prevents the doors from opening from the inside once the vehicle is locked.

The SAFE function is activated when the vehicle is locked from the outside.

In the display of the instrument cluster after the ignition is switched off, a message regarding the SAFE function is displayed.

⚠ **DANGER**

Risk of death!

- ▶ No people are allowed in the locked vehicle with the SAFE function.

Turn off the SAFE function

- ▶ By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

- ▶ Together with the deactivation of the interior monitoring » [page 25, Settings](#).

The warning light in the driver's door will flash for about 2 seconds in quick succession after the vehicle is locked, then goes out and starts flashing regularly at longer intervals after about 30 secs.

When the SAFE function is switched off, the door can be opened from the inside by pulling once on the opening lever.

The SAFE function is switched on again after unlocking and locking the vehicle.

Operation

Ways in which central locking operates

Depending upon vehicle equipment:

- ▶ Key » [page 22](#)
- ▶ Keyless locking (KESSEY) » [page 24](#).
- ▶ Central locking button

Lock/unlock using the central locking button

- › The  button in the middle part of the control panel.

The  symbol in the button comes on when locked.

The button locks/unlocks all of the doors and the boot lid.

Unlocking of the vehicle also takes place when opening a door from the inside or when removing the key from the ignition.

⚠ **WARNING**

A locked vehicle with a central locking button makes it difficult for responders to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

Setting the unlocking and locking function

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR >  > 

Or:

MENU >  > 

All doors

Unlocking of all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Single door

Using the  button on the key, the driver's door and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the door near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by touching the door handle.

When unlocked again, the other doors and the boot lid are unlocked.

Doors on one side of the vehicle

Using the  button on the key, the doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap are unlocked.

In vehicles equipped with a keyless locking system, the doors on the passenger's side near to which the key is located and the fuel filler flap are unlocked by touching the door handle.

When unlocked again, the other doors and the boot lid are unlocked.

Automatic locking after starting

All doors and the boot lid are locked when a speed of 15 km/h is reached.

Unlocking of the vehicle takes place when opening a door from the inside or when removing the key from the ignition.

⚠ **WARNING**

An automatically locked vehicle makes it difficult for responders to enter the vehicle in an emergency.

Troubleshooting

Central locking fault

- ▶ The warning light in the driver's door first flashes for 2 secs in quick succession.
- ▶ Then it lights up continuously.
- ▶ After 30 secs, it flashes slowly.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

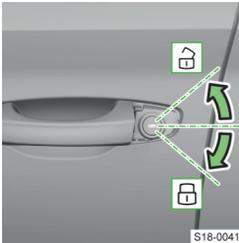
Mechanically unlocking and locking the door

Unlocking and locking the door with the lock cylinder



S18-0037

- Remove the cover
- › Pull the handle on the front left door and hold it in place.
 - › Insert the key into the recess on the underside of the cover.
 - › Lift the cover in the direction of the arrow.
 - › Release the door handle.



S18-0041

- Locking and unlocking
- › Insert the key into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock it.
- Install cover
- › Pull on the door handle and hold it.
 - › Replace the cover.
 - › Release the door handle.

Locking the door without the lock cylinder



S18-0038

- › Open the door.
- › For vehicles with a panel over the opening, remove the panel.
- › Insert the key or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
- › Turn the key or flat-head screwdriver towards the outside of the vehicle (spring-loaded position).

After closing, the door is locked.

Locking the door without the lock cylinder



S20-0293

- › Open the door.
- › For vehicles with a panel over the opening, remove the panel.
- › Insert the key or a flat-head screwdriver into the slot.
- › Use the key or a flat-blade screwdriver to push it in towards the door.

After closing, the door is locked.

Keyless locking (KESY)

Usage

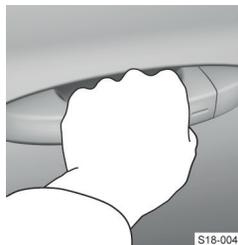
The keyless locking system, KESY, enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

Operation

Keep the key with you when unlocking and locking.

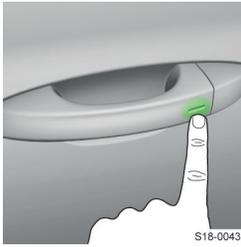
The sensors on the handle are intended to be operated with bare hands, e.g. wearing gloves may affect the function of the sensors.

Release



S18-0042

- › Grab the door handle.
- › Open the door.

Lock

- › Touch the sensor.

After locking, it is not possible to unlock within 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

Unlocking the boot lid

- › Press the handle of the boot lid.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle

If the key is locked inside the vehicle, the vehicle will unlock itself automatically. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle automatically locks again.

If the key is locked in the boot, the boot lid will automatically unlock itself.

Settings**Deactivate keyless locking**

- › Lock the vehicle with the button  on the key.
- › Within 5 s, touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger.

Deactivation is confirmed by a single flash of the direction indicators.

- › To check the deactivation, wait at least 10 seconds and then pull the door handle.

The door must remain locked.

Keyless locking is automatically activated once again after the vehicle is unlocked.

Troubleshooting**The vehicle cannot be unlocked or locked using the sensors on the handle**

- › Lock or unlock the vehicle with the button on the key.
- › Then try to unlock or lock the vehicle using the sensors on the handle.
- › If keyless locking does not work, seek the help of a specialist garage.

 If the vehicle is not unlocked for a longer period of time, the function can be deactivated automatically.

When the ignition was switched on, no key was found

 illuminates
Message that no key was found in the vehicle

- › Insert the key into the vehicle.

Alarm system**Functionality**

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals during a break-in or towing attempt.

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked.

The alarm system is automatically deactivated after the vehicle is unlocked.

Alarm triggering

The activated alarm system triggers an alarm when one of the following events occurs:

- ▶ Opening the bonnet
- ▶ Opening the boot lid
- ▶ Opening the door
- ▶ Manipulation of the ignition lock
- ▶ Towing the vehicle
- ▶ Movement in the vehicle
- ▶ Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system
- ▶ Uncoupling the trailer
- ▶ Opening the door unlocked via the lock cylinder

Switching off the triggered alarm

- › Unlock the vehicle.

Or:

- › Turn on the ignition.

Operating conditions

For the correct functioning of the alarm system, all windows must be closed.

A trailer is integrated into the alarm system under the following conditions:

- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The trailer is not equipped with LED taillights.

If the electrical connection to the trailer is interrupted on a vehicle with an activated alarm system, warning signals are triggered.

 Disable the alarm before connecting or disconnecting a trailer.

Settings

The following functions of the alarm system can be deactivated at the same time:

- ▶ Interior monitoring
- ▶ Towing protection

Deactivation will also switch off the SAFE function » page 22, *Functionality*.

Deactivation

- ▶ By double locking within 2 seconds.

Or:

- ▶ In infotainment in the menu **CAR** > > > Menu item for interior monitoring

Or:

- ▶ In infotainment in the menu **MENU** > > > Menu item for interior monitoring

The deactivated functions are reactivated after the vehicle is unlocked and locked again.

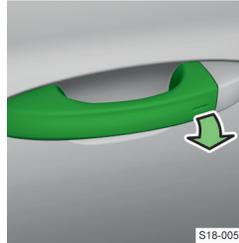
i Deactivation is to be carried out if the vehicle is, for example, towed or transported.

Doors, windows and boot lid

Doors

Opening/closing the door

Opening from the outside



- ▶ Unlock the vehicle and pull on the door handle.

Opening from the inside



- ▶ Pull the door opening lever and push the door away from you.

Closing from the inside

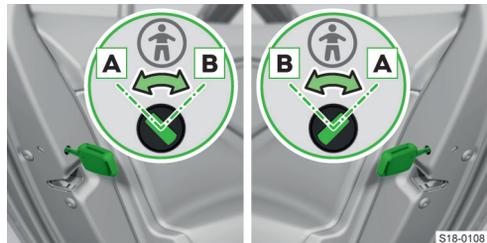
- ▶ Grasp the pull handle and close the door.

Child safety lock on the rear doors

Operation

The child lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

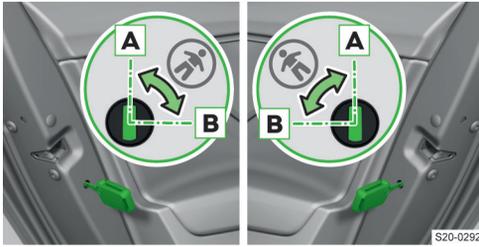
Switching on and off



- ▶ Turn the child lock with the vehicle key or a flat-head screwdriver.

A Child lock switched off

B Child lock switched on

Switching on and off

- › Turn the child lock with the vehicle key or a flat-head screwdriver.

- A** Child lock switched off
- B** Child lock switched on

Protective door strip**What you should be mindful of****NOTICE**

Risk of damage to the strip, the door and the body!

- › Do not open the door too hastily or abruptly.
- › Do not hold the door on the strip when opening and closing, as the strip must be able to move in and out freely.
- › If the strip prevents the door from closing freely, do not close the door forcefully! Remove the strip, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Usage

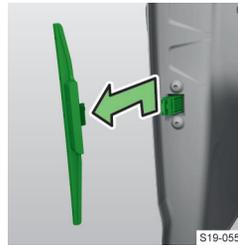
Depending on the trim level, the doors can each be equipped with a protective strip. This moves out when opening the door and protects the central area of the door edge from damage.

When the door closes the protective strip retracts.

Self-help**Replacing the damaged strip****CAUTION**

Risk of injury!

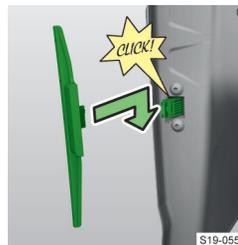
- › Be careful when handling the strip.



- › Remove the strip from the door.

NOTICE

- › If any part of the strip remains in the door, seek the help of a specialist garage.

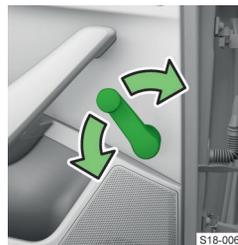


- › Insert a new strip in the grooves.
- › Press in the strip.

- i** A new strip can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Parts.

Window - with manual operation**Operation**

- i** When the windows are open, irritating noises may occur at certain speeds.



- › Turn the crank in the appropriate direction.

Window - with electrical operation**What you should be mindful of****Force limiter**

To reduce the risk of pinch injuries when closing the windows, the vehicle has a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the window closing process is stopped and the pane retracts by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents it from being closed for the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted

once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time, it is not possible to automatically close the windows by pulling the button all the way. The force limiter is, however, switched on.

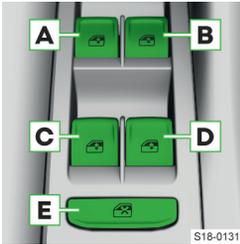
The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – the window will now close with full force! If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- ▶ Close the windows carefully, even though they have a force limiter.

Overview of the operating buttons on the driver's door



Depending upon vehicle equipment:

- A** Front left window
- B** Front right window
- C** Rear left window
- D** Rear right window
- E** Deactivation/activation of the buttons in

the rear doors

Operation

i When the windows are open, irritating noises may occur at certain speeds.

Opening

- ▶ Press the corresponding button slightly downwards and hold it until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

- ▶ Press the corresponding button until it stops; the window opens automatically. Pressing the button again will stop the opening process.

Closing

- ▶ To close, pull gently upwards on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has reached the desired position.

Or:

- ▶ Pull the corresponding button until it stops; the window closes automatically. By pressing the button again, the closing process is stopped.

i After switching off the ignition, the windows can still open and close for about 10 minutes so long as none of the doors are opened.

Open all of the windows at the same time

- ▶ Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

- ▶ Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and hold down the driver's window button until it stops.

Close all of the windows at the same time

- ▶ Press and hold the button on the key.

Or:

- ▶ Turn off the ignition, open the driver's door, and pull upwards on the driver's window button until it stops.

Or:

- ▶ For vehicles with a keyless locking system, hold one finger on the sensor on the outside of the handle on the front door.

Settings

The window operation is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > > > Menu item for window operation

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for window operation

Troubleshooting

The window regulator has stopped working after repeated opening and closing

The window regulator mechanism could have overheated.

- ▶ Allow the window regulator mechanism to cool down.

The window operation does not work after disconnecting the 12 volt vehicle battery

- ▶ Enable window operation » [page 28](#).

Activation after disconnecting the 12-volt vehicle battery

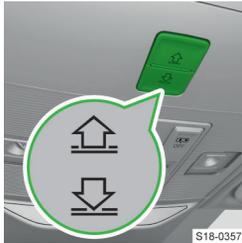
Activate automatic window operation

- ▶ Turn on the ignition.
- ▶ Pull the corresponding button upwards and the window closes.

- › Release the button.
- › Pull up the respective button and hold for 1 second.

Sunblind - with electrical operation

Operation



- Closing
- Opening
- › Press or hold the button to **move** the roller blind.
- › Press or release the button to **stop** the roller blind from moving.

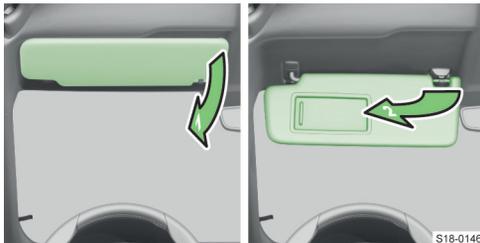
S18-0357

Activation after disconnecting the 12-volt vehicle battery

- › Turn on the ignition.
- › Keep the button pressed down. The sunblind opens and closes again.
- › Release the button.

Sun visors

Folding up and folding down



S18-0146

- 1 Swivel the front visor towards the windscreen
- 2 Swivel the visor towards the door

⚠ CAUTION

Objects attached to the sun visors can restrict the view to the outside. In the event of sudden braking or an impact, these can also cause injuries.

- ▶ Do not attach anything to the sun visor.

Boot lid - with manual operation

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

Operation

Opening



S18-0054

- › Press the handle and lift the lid.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once a speed of 5 km/h is reached. This is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Closing



S18-0397

- › Grasp the fixture **A** and pull the lid down.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!

- ▶ Make sure that the latch engages after the flap is closed.

Set a delayed lid lock

If the lid is unlocked with the button on the key, the lid is automatically locked again after closing.

The period after which the lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

Boot lid - with electrical control

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Do not attach a bike rack to the tailgate.

Operation

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- › Only operate the tailgate when there is nobody or no objects in the swivel area.

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of opening the tailgate while driving!

- › Make sure that the latch engages after the flap is closed.

① NOTICE

- › Do not manually close the tailgate when moving.
- › Before operating the tailgate, check that there are no objects in the swivel area that could damage the tailgate. Also check that there are no objects within the immediate vicinity of the vehicle that could damage the vehicle interior and the transported objects.

i If the tailgate hits an obstacle when closing, it stops and an audible signal sounds.

i When automatically closing the tailgate, e.g. under the weight of snow, a broken beep sounds.

i The rear parking light flashing twice indicates that the flap is closed.

Handle in the tailgate



S18-0054

- › Press the handle to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

The option to open by pressing the handle is deactivated once a speed of 5 km/h is reached. This is activated again after the vehicle has stopped and a door

is opened.

Button in the tailgate



S18-0061

- › Press the button to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

Button in the door



S18-0059

release the button.

Button on the key



S18-0060

- › To open the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate starts to open.
- › To close the tailgate, pull and hold the button until the tailgate is fully closed.
- › To stop the movement of the tailgate, pull or

- › Press the  button to open, close or stop the movement of the tailgate.

The option to lock exists only on vehicles with a keyless locking system. The key must not be in the vehicle and must be at a distance of max. 2 m from the tailgate.

i The tailgate can also be closed by pulling it briefly downwards.

Settings

Set the uppermost position of the tailgate and store it

It makes sense to set the top position of the tailgate, e.g. setting for the opening of the tailgate in a limited space due to the garage height.

- › Stop the tailgate in the desired position.
- › Press the  button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Re-adjusting the top starting position of the tailgate

- › Carefully raise the tailgate manually to the limit.
- › Press the  button and hold down on the lower edge of the tailgate until an audible signal sounds.

Troubleshooting

The tailgate does not react to the opening signal

- › There is a possible obstacle, e.g. snow; remove it.

Or:

- › Press the handle in the tailgate and lift the lid.

Or:

- › Mechanically unlock the flap » page 31.

The tailgate does not react to the closing signal

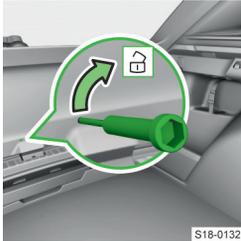
- › Close the tailgate manually.

ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Close the tailgate slowly, push down the tailgate and push in the lock on the centre of the rear edge of the tailgate.

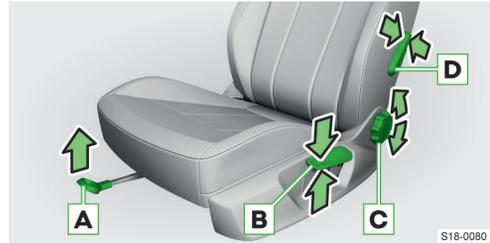
Unlocking the boot lid**Release**

If the boot lid does not open, it can be unlocked manually by the following procedure.



S18-0132

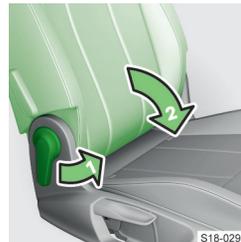
- › Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the panel.
- › Release the tailgate by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Seats, steering wheel and mirror**Front seat - with manual operation****Controls on the seat**

S18-0080

- A** Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction - after releasing the operating lever, the lock must audibly click into place
- B** Adjusting the height
- C** Adjusting the angle of the backrest - do not lean against the backrest during adjustment
- D** Adjusting the lumbar support: Extent of the curvature

After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Folding passenger seat backrest**Folding down**

S18-0295

- › Pull on the operating lever.
- › Fold the backrest forwards until it clicks into place.

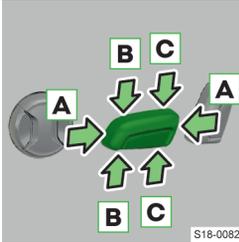
Folding back up

- › Pull on the operating lever.
- › Press the backrest backwards until it audibly clicks into place.

Front seat - with electrical operation

Controls on the seat

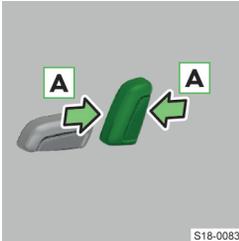
Adjusting the seat



- A** Adjust in a longitudinal direction
- B** Adjust the inclination
- C** Adjusting the height

S18-0082

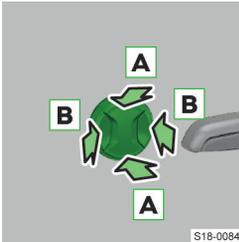
Adjusting the seat back



- A** Adjust the inclination

S18-0083

Adjusting the lumbar support



- A** Set the position of the curvature
- B** Set the extent of the curvature

S18-0084

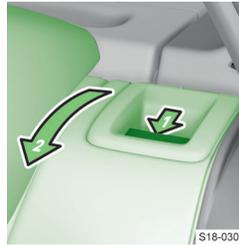
Rear seats

Folding down the seat backs

Before folding down

- › Insert the rear headrests as far as they will go or remove them.
- › Adjust the position of the front seats in such a way that they are not damaged by the folded-down seat backrests.
- › Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.

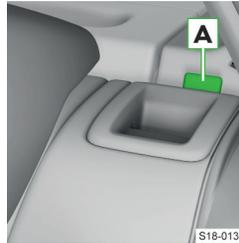
Folding down



- › Press the release handle and fold the seat forwards.

S18-0300

Folding back up



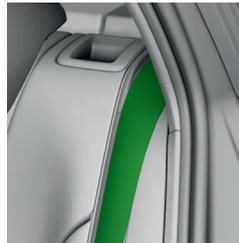
- › Pull the outer seat belt to the side trim.
- › Fold the seat backrest back up.

The release handle must audibly click into place.

- › Check that the seat backrest has locked in place. The pin **A** must not be visible.

S18-0133

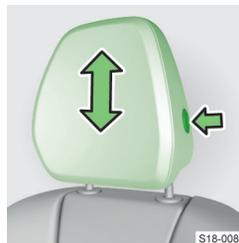
Park position of rear seat belts



Headrests

Adjusting the headrests

Front headrests



- › Hold the safety button and move the headrest in the desired direction.

S18-0089

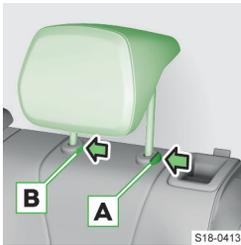
Rear headrests



- › Move the headrest in the desired direction. When pushing down, press and hold the safety button.

Removing and inserting the rear headrests

Removing



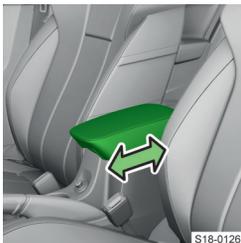
- › Partially fold the respective seat back forwards.
- › Move the headrest up to the stop.
- › Press safety buttons **A** and **B** at the same time and remove the support.

Inserting

- › Insert the headrest into the seat backrest. The safety button must click into place.

Front armrest

Settings



- › Move the backrest to the desired position.

Rear armrest

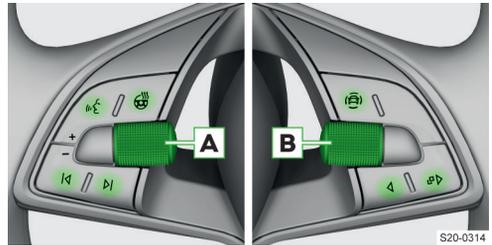
Settings



- › Fold down the armrest. The folded-down armrest can be used as a storage table.

Steering wheel

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel



- ☰ Switch voice control on/off
- ☰ Heated steering wheel » page 53
- A** **Rotate** - Adjust the volume
- Press** - Switch the sound off/on
- ⏮ Switch to the next track/station played
- ⏪ Switch to the previous track/station played
- ☰ Show menu of assistance systems
- B** Depending upon vehicle equipment:
 - ▶ Operating an analogue instrument cluster » page 55
 - ▶ Operating a digital instrument cluster » page 56
- ☰ Depending upon vehicle equipment:
 - ▶ Operating an analogue instrument cluster » page 55
 - ▶ Operating a digital instrument cluster » page 56
- ◀ Depending upon vehicle equipment:
 - ▶ Operating an analogue instrument cluster » page 55
 - ▶ Operating a digital instrument cluster » page 56

Setting the steering wheel position

⚠ WARNING
Risk of an accident!

› Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.



› Swing the safety lever downwards.



› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



› Press the safety lever as far as it will go.

Troubleshooting

Power assisted steering faulty

⚠ illuminates - total failure of the power assisted steering, failure of steering assistance

- › Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.
- › If the indicator light **⚠** does not go out, do not continue driving. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

⚠ illuminates - partial failure of the power assisted steering, possible reduction in power steering

- › Turn off the ignition, start the engine and drive a few meters.
- › If the indicator light **⚠** does not go out, you can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Steering column lock faulty

⚠ flashes
Message regarding a fault in the steering column lock

- › Stop the vehicle.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching off the ignition, it is then no longer possible to switch on the ignition, to lock the steering and to switch on the electrical components.

⚠ flashes
Message regarding a fault in the steering lock

- › You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Steering column lock not unlocked

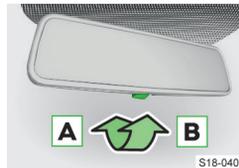
⚠ flashes
Message concerning the required steering wheel movement

- › Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth.
- › If the steering does not unlock, stop the vehicle and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Interior rear-view mirror

Operation

Interior mirror with manual darkening



A Mirror is not darkened

B Mirror darkens

Interior mirror with automatic darkening

Darkening of the mirror is automatically controlled through the sensors in the mirror once the engine is started.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of an accident!

A glowing display e.g. a mobile phone or navigation device may affect the function of the automatic mirror darkening.

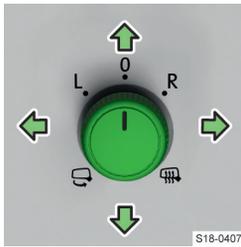
- › Do not attach these devices close to the mirror.

Wing mirror

Operation

Depending on the equipment, the mirrors can be folded in manually or electrically.

Positions of the rotary knob



- L** Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror
- 0** Switch off operation
- R** Adjust the right-hand exterior mirror
-  Fold mirror in electrically (to fold back out, select a different position)
-  Heat the mirror

when the engine is running

Adjusting the mirror surface

- › Select position **L** or **R**.
- › Turn the rotary knob in the direction of the arrows.

Folding electrically folding mirrors automatically

If this function is activated, the mirrors are folded in when the vehicle is locked and folded back when it is unlocked.

i Locking of the vehicle is not indicated by the fact that the mirrors fold in. Locking of the vehicle is indicated by the turn signal lights flashing.

Manually foldable mirrors

- › Fold the mirror towards the side window by applying pressure with your hand.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

The exterior mirrors make objects appear farther away.

- ▶ Use the rear-view mirror to determine the distance from vehicles behind.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of mirror damage!

- ▶ If the electrically foldable mirror is swung out by external influences (e.g. due to an impact during manoeuvring), fold the mirror in using the rotary knob and wait for an audible folding sound.

Settings

Automatic folding of the exterior mirrors is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR ›  › 

Or:

MENU ›  ›  › 

Troubleshooting

Electric mirror operation impaired

- › Adjust the mirror surface by pressing it lightly with your finger.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burns!

- ▶ Do not touch heated exterior mirror surfaces.

Restraint systems and airbags

Seat belts

Functionality

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer very good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

⚠ WARNING

- ▶ The seat belts must not be removed or altered in any other way.
- ▶ If the driver's seat belt is damaged, stop driving.
- ▶ If another seat belt is damaged, the seat must not be occupied.
- ▶ Do not repair damaged seat belts yourself.
- ▶ Have a damaged seat belt replaced immediately by a specialist garage.

Automatic belt retractor

The automatic retractor locks the belt in the event of a jerky pull on the belt. The belts lock, for example, when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

⚠ WARNING

- ▶ If the seat belt does not lock when pulled jerkily, have the retractor checked by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

The safety of the driver, front passenger and passengers on the outer rear seats **who are wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels on the front and rear external seat belts.

If there is a collision with a certain severity, the seat belt is tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body movement is prevented.

The belt tensioner can also be deployed when the seat belt is not fastened.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of a roll-over, **minor** collisions or in accidents in which no major forces are produced.

☐ Smoke is released when the belt tensioner is deployed. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Reversible belt tensioner

Vehicles with a proactive occupant protection system include reversible belt tensioners » [page 141](#).

The reversible belt tensioners increase safety for the belted driver and front passenger by automatically tightening the seat belt tightly over the body in critical driving situations and then releasing it again.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

Depending on the type of display, the display can be as follows:

 illuminated – a front or rear seat belt is not fastened

 lights up - rear seat not occupied

 illuminated – a rear seat belt is not fastened

 illuminated – a rear seat belt is not fastened

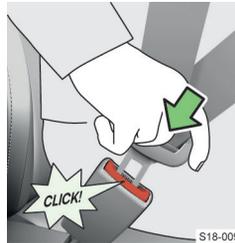
 illuminated – a rear seat belt is fastened.

 illuminated – a rear seat belt is fastened.

 illuminated – a rear seat belt is fastened.

Operation

Fastening the seat belt



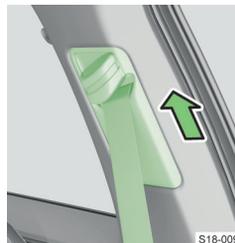
- ▶ Grasp the buckle latch and slowly pull the belt over the chest and pelvis towards the buckle.
- ▶ Insert the buckle latch into the buckle until there is an audible click.
- ▶ Pull on the belt to ensure that the buckle is securely fastened.

Unfastening the seat belt



- ▶ Grasp the buckle latch and release it by pressing the red button.
- ▶ Hold the belt so it does not twist when rolling up.

Settings



- ▶ Move the seat belt height adjuster upwards to increase the height.



S18-0097

- › Press the safety button and move the seat belt height adjuster down to reduce the height.
- › After adjustment, firmly pull on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place and that the belt is locked securely.

Troubleshooting

Blocked belt retractor



S18-0355

- › Grasp the strap in the middle and pull quickly.
 - › Hold the strap and let it roll up slowly.
 - › Pull on the strap to see if the retractor is working properly.
 - › If the strap is still blocked, repeat the unlocking procedure once or twice.
- › If the strap is still blocked, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Child seat

What you should be mindful of

For how to install and use the child seat, please note the instructions in this Owner's Manual as well as the instructions of the child seat manufacturer.

For safety reasons, we always recommend that children are transported on the back seats. Carry children on the front passenger seat only in exceptional cases.

Use child seats according to standard ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 of the European Economic Commission.

Child seats according to standard ECE-R 44 and ECE-R 129 are marked with the test symbol: large E in a circle, with the test number below.

We recommend using child seats from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range. These child seats have been developed and tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They satisfy the standard ECE-R 44 or ECE-R 129.

⚠ WARNING

- › When installing the child seat on the rear seat, adjust the front seat so that there is no contact be-

tween the front seat and the child seat or the child carried in the child seat.

- › Before installing a forward-facing child seat, adjust the headrest so that it is as low as possible.
- › If the headrest prevents the child seat from being fitted, adjust the headrest to the highest position.
- › When installing the child seat, avoid contact between the roof and the rear pillar. If the head airbag is deployed, there is a risk of injury.
- › If using a separate child seat cushion, adjust the headrest so that the child's head is flush with, but not protruding above the height of the top edge of the headrest.

Using a child seat on the front passenger seat

When using a child seat on the passenger seat, any country-specific regulations must be observed.

Never use a child seat in which the child is carried with his or her back to the direction of travel on a seat protected by an active airbag placed in front of the seat. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

This is also indicated by the following stickers:



S18-0113

- Ⓐ Sticker on the passenger sun visor
- Ⓑ Sticker on the central body pillar on the passenger side

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat:

- › It is essential to deactivate the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is transported with its back facing the direction of travel » page 42.
- › If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is vertical, to ensure that there is secure contact between the backrest and the child seat.
- › If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- › Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.
- › Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.

38 Restraint systems and airbags › Fasteners for child seats

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the seat belt causing a neck injury to the transported child!

- ▶ For child seats in groups 2 and 3, ensure that the guide fitting attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the seat belt height adjuster on the central body pillar.
- ▶ Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt passes through the guide fitting

without kinking and is not bent over the edge of the guide fitting.

⚠ WARNING

- ▶ As soon as the rear-facing child seat is no longer being used on the front passenger seat, activate the front passenger airbag again.

Recommended child seats

Grouping of child seats according to standard ECE-R 44.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0+	up to 13 kg
1	9-18 kg
2	15-25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Recommended child seats

Group	Manufacturer	Type	Attachment	Order number	Approval number (E1 ...)
0+ (up to 13 kg)	Britax Römer	Baby Safe Plus	Isifix base frame	1ST019907	04 301146
1 (9-18 kg)	Britax Römer	Duo Plus TT	ISOFIX and TOP TETHER	DDA000006	04 301133
2-3 (15-36 kg)	Britax Römer	Kidfix XP ^{a)}	ISOFIX	000019906K	04 301198
	Britax Römer	Kidfix II XP	ISOFIX	000019906L	04 301323

^{a)} For optimum protection, especially in the event of a side impact, it is recommended that you use this child seat complete with the backrest.

Fasteners for child seats

Use of child seats

Overview of usability of child seats according to standard ECE-R 16.

Child seats with the ISOFIX system

Group	Size category of child seat ^{a)}	Front passenger's seat		Rear seats	
		With activated front airbag ^{b)}	With deactivated front airbag ^{b)}	Outer seats ^{c)}	Centre seat
0 (up to 10 kg)	E	X	X	IL	X
0+ (up to 13 kg)	E D C	X	X	IL	X
1 (9-18 kg)	D C B B1 A	X	X	IL IUF	X
2 (15-25 kg)	-	X	X	IL	X
3 (22-36 kg)	-	X	X	IL	X

^{a)} The size category of the child seat is indicated on the child seat plate.
^{b)} If the passenger seat is equipped with ISOFIX system holding eyelets, it is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval.
^{c)} The seat is suitable for the fixing system ISO/R3.

IL The seat is suitable for the ISOFIX child seats with "Semi-Universal" approval.

IUF The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats and is permitted for use in this weight category.

X The seat is not equipped with eyelets for the ISOFIX system.

i-Size

Front passenger's seat		Rear seats	
With activated front airbag ^{a)}	With deactivated front airbag ^{b)}	Outer seats	Centre seat
X	X	i-U	X

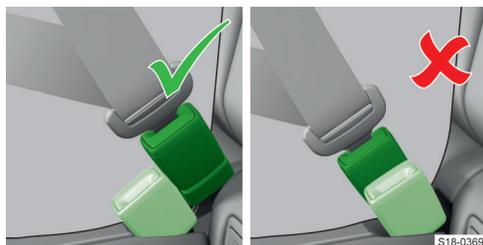
^{a)} If the passenger seat is equipped with the i-Size system, it is only suitable for i-Size children's seats that are forward-facing and part of the "Universal" category.
^{b)} If the passenger seat is equipped with the i-Size system, it is suitable for i-Size children's seats that are forward- and backward-facing and part of the "Universal" category.

i-U The seat is suitable for forward- and backward-facing i-Size child seats of the "Universal" category.

X The seat is not suitable for i-Size child seats of the "Universal" category.

Child seat fastened with a safety belt

When using a child seat of the "Universal" category on the middle rear seat, it is necessary to move the buckle of the middle seat behind the buckle of the outer seat.



- ✓ Correct position – the belt buckles are behind each other
- ✗ Incorrect position – the buckles are next to each other

Group	Front passenger's seat		Rear seats	
	With activated front airbag	With deactivated front airbag	Outer seats	Centre seat ^{a)}
0 (up to 10 kg)	X	U ^{b)}	U	U
0+ (up to 13 kg)	X	U ^{b)}	U	U
1 (9-18 kg)	UF	U	U	U
2 (15-25 kg)	UF	U	U	U
3 (22-36 kg)	UF	U	U	U

^{a)} It is forbidden to install a child seat with a support foot in the middle rear seat.
^{b)} Adjust the height-adjustable front passenger seat as much as possible.

U The seat is suitable for the child seat category "Universal" and is permitted for use in this weight group.

UF The seat is suitable for forward-facing child seats in the "Universal" category and is permitted for use in this weight group.

X The seat is not suitable for children in this weight group.

Overview

ISOFIX

⚠ WARNING

- ▶ On the retaining eyelets that are used to install the child seat with the ISOFIX System provided, do not attach any other child seats, belts or objects.

The ISOFIX system allows for the fast and secure installation of the child seat. The eyelets for installing the child seat using the ISOFIX system are located on the outer rear seats and possibly on the front passenger seat.

A child seat that uses the ISOFIX system can only be installed in the vehicle if it is approved for this vehicle type. Further information can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner or from a list of vehicles enclosed with the child seat.



- ▶ Remove the covers before installing the child seat.

TOP TETHER

⚠ WARNING

- ▶ Child seats with the TOP TETHER- Only use the system on the seats with the eyelets TOP TETHERSymbol are provided.
- ▶ Only attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye TOP TETHER-Fasten the system.
- ▶ When attaching the child seat with the TOP TETHER- No other object may be attached to the eyelet TOP TETHERSystem.



Holding eyelets on the rear seats



Holding eyelet on the passenger seat

The belt fastened into the TOP TETHER system restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

The holding eyelets for attaching the belt are located on the outer rear seats, as well as on the middle rear seat or passenger seat when necessary.

Airbags

Usage

The airbag system provides, as a supplement to the seat belts, additional occupant protection during severe frontal and side-on collisions.

The best possible protective effect of the airbag is achieved only when the seat belt is also worn. The airbag system is no substitute for the seat belts.

What you should be mindful of

Airbag systems can only properly protect if all occupants have been secured and they are in the correct seating position.

No persons, animals or objects such as cup holders or hangers for clothes may be in the deployment area of the airbags » [page 41](#).

- ▶ Do not cover or stick anything over the steering wheel or the dash panel. The front airbags were not able to deploy.

The front passenger airbag should be switched off in some situations » [page 42](#).

Functionality

When sinking into the inflated airbag, the forward movement of the body is damped and the risk of injury is reduced.

i As the airbags inflate, smoke is released. This does not indicate a vehicle fire.

Airbag deployment in the event of an accident

Airbag deployment is influenced by many factors. The deceleration rate at the time of impact is crucial.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of serious or fatal injuries!

- ▶ Maintain the correct seating position.
- ▶ Do not keep your limbs in the deployment area of the airbags.

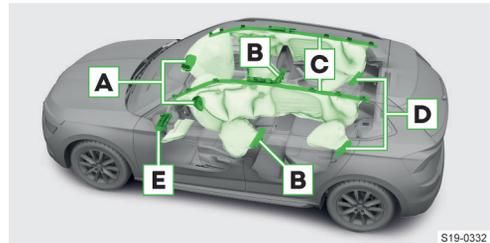
In the following situations, **no** airbags are deployed:

- ▶ Minor frontal and side collisions
- ▶ Rear-end collision
- ▶ Vehicle rollover

If the measured deceleration rate is below the reference values programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be deployed despite possible serious vehicle damage.

Airbag overview

The installation location of the airbags is marked with the lettering **AIRBAG**.



- A** Front airbags
- B** Side airbags - front
- C** Head airbags
- D** Side airbags - rear
- E** Driver's knee airbag

⚠ WARNING

Danger of a functional restriction of the side airbags!

- ▶ Do not exert excessive forces, e.g. impacts, on the seat backs.
- ▶ Do not use seat covers that have not been approved by ŠKODA.
- ▶ Have damaged seat covers at the installation location of the side airbags repaired by a specialist garage.

Deactivating the airbags

We recommend having airbags other than the front passenger airbag deactivated » [page 42](#), *Operation* by a ŠKODA service partner.

Deactivation of the airbags should be considered in cases such as the ones below:

- ▶ If the driver's seat adjustment is correct, the distance of at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the sternum cannot be maintained.
- ▶ Additional operating controls for a physically disadvantaged driver are installed in the vehicle.
- ▶ The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.



illuminates for 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for 12 seconds

- Airbag or belt tensioner deactivated with the diagnostic device

Message regarding the deactivated airbag or belt tensioner

⚠ WARNING

If an airbag is deactivated during the sale of the vehicle, inform the buyer!

Requirements

- ✓ Ignition on

Troubleshooting

Airbag system faulty



illuminates

Message regarding an airbag fault

- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Key switch for the front passenger airbag

Usage

Deactivation of the front passenger airbag is provided for the following cases, for example:

- ▶ A rear-facing child seat is mounted on the front passenger seat.
- ▶ The vehicle has special seats, e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags.
- ▶ The minimum distance to the control panel cannot be maintained.

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Danger of fault in the passenger airbag deactivation system!

- ▶ Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of unexpected deployment of the passenger airbags in an accident!

- ▶ After switching off the passenger airbag with the key bit, do not leave the key bit inserted in the key switch while driving. Shocks can cause the Key assignment to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag.

Operation

Before switching off/switching on the front passenger airbag

- › Completely fold out the key bit.

Switch front passenger front airbag on/off



- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Open the passenger door.
- › Insert the key bit into the slot in the key switch as far as it will go.
- › To **Switch off**, carefully rotate the key switch into the position **OFF**.

- › To **Switch on**, carefully rotate the key switch into the position **ON**.
- › Remove the key bit from the slot.
- › Close the passenger door.
- › Turn on the ignition and check that the front passenger airbag indicator lights are lit up.

⚠ WARNING

When the passenger airbag is switched off, the head airbag on the passenger side is also switched off at the same time.

Warning lights



- ▶ After switching on the ignition, the two indicator lights light up briefly.
- ▶ If the system is OK, both of the indicator lights go out.

- ▶ One of the indicator lights then lights up again depending on the position of the key switch:

OFF lights up - front passenger airbag switched off

ON lights up 65 secs after the ignition is switched on - passenger front airbag switched on

Troubleshooting

Key switch for airbag deactivation is faulty

ON flashes together with **OFF** . The front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident!

- › Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

Lighting, windscreen wipers and washers

Exterior lighting

Functionality

Unless otherwise stated, the light works when the ignition is switched on.

Daylight running lights

The daytime running lights illuminate the area in front of the vehicle.

i In vehicles for certain markets, this also provides lighting for the rear area of the vehicle.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The lights switch is in position **0**, **AUTO** or **☰**.

Switching the low beam on/off automatically

The low beam is automatically switched on or off depending on the lighting conditions.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

The automatic headlight circuit is indicated by the illumination of the symbol **☰** in the light switch.

Switching low beam on automatically in rain

Operating conditions

- ✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.
- ✓ The function is activated.
- ✓ The windscreen wipers are switched on for longer than 30 seconds.

The automatic headlight circuit is indicated by the illumination of the symbol **☰** in the light switch.

Full LED Headlights

When the light switch is in position **AUTO**, the headlights provide the best possible beam of light in front of the vehicle. The **Dynamic cornering light** function ensures the best possible illumination of the curve area.

CORNER function

The CORNER function is intended for turning or manoeuvring (e.g. when parking).

The function illuminates the vicinity of the vehicle front in the direction of travel.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are steered sharply.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.
- ✓ The driving speed is lower than 40 km/h.

When no light is switched on

The symbol **☼** in the light switch may also light up in the instrument cluster, indicating that it is necessary to switch on the light.

☼ illuminates

- > Switch on the light.

Operation



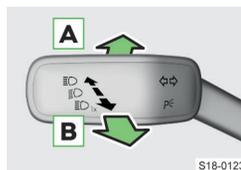
S18-0135

- 0** Switching off the lights except the daytime running lights
- AUTO** Switching the low beam on/off automatically
- ☰** Switching on the parking lights
- ☼** Switching on the low beam

i As the basic position of the light switch, use position **AUTO**.

High beam and headlight flasher

The high beam works when the low beam is on.



S18-0123

- A** Switch on high beam
- B** Switch off main beam / switch on headlight flasher

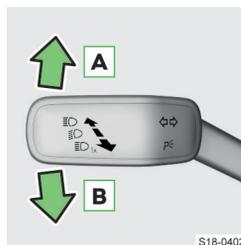
When the main beam or headlight flasher is switched on, the indicator lamp lights up in the instrument cluster **☹**.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of an accident!

- > Do not dazzle other road users with the high beam.

Turn signal



S18-0402

- A** Switching on the turn signal light on the right - the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster **➔**
- B** Switching on the turn signal light on the left - the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster **➔**

ter **➔**

Turn signal - convenience signalling

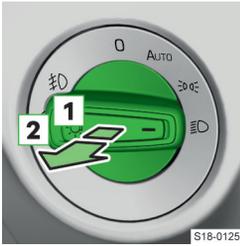
Convenience signalling enables three flashes of the turn signal lights without having to move the lever up or down.

- > Tap the control lever up or down.

The corresponding turn signal lights flash three times.

Tap the lever in the opposite direction ahead of time to stop signalling.

Fog light



Positions for pulling out the light switch

- 1 Fog lights - when switched on, the indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates 𐄀
- 2 Rear fog light - when switched on, the indicator light in the

instrument cluster illuminates 𐄀

- › Turn the light switch to position **AUTO**, 𐄀 or 𐄀.
- › Pull the light switch to the appropriate position.

1 The rear fog light does not illuminate when an accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Hazard warning light system

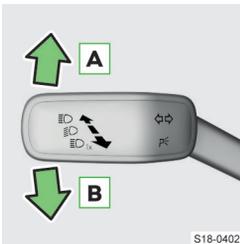
- › Press the button to switch on or off 𐄀 in the middle part of the control panel.

The hazard warning lights can be switched on automatically during hard braking. The hazard warning lights are then switched off again automatically when starting off or accelerating.

1 When the hazard warning system is on and the turn signal is switched on, the hazard warning lights will be switched off temporarily and only the turn signal will flash on the relevant side of the vehicle.

One-sided parking light 𐄀

The one-sided parking light allows one side of the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the corresponding sidelights.



- A Switch on the side-lights on the right
- B Switch on the side-lights on the left

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Move the lever to the appropriate position.
- › Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic

warning signal sounds and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

Double-sided parking light 𐄀

The two-sided parking light allows the parked vehicle to be illuminated through activation of the side-lights.

- › Turn on the ignition.

- › Turn the light switch to position 𐄀.
- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Lock the vehicle.

When the parking light is switched on, an acoustic warning signal sounds after the ignition is switched off and the driver's door is opened. After a few seconds or after the driver's door is closed, the warning signal will stop.

The light may switch off automatically if the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low. If the parking lights on both sides are switched on with the ignition off, the lights will not be switched off automatically and the 12 volt vehicle battery may be discharged.

Settings

Activating/deactivating the automatic headlights system in rain

The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > 𐄀 > 𐄀

Or:

MENU > 𐄀 > 𐄀 > 𐄀

Activating/deactivating convenience signalling

The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > 𐄀 > 𐄀

Or:

MENU > 𐄀 > 𐄀 > 𐄀

Headlamp levelling, LED headlights

- › Select the position of the control according to the vehicle's current load status.



- Front seats occupied, boot empty
- 1 All seats occupied, boot empty
- 2 All seats occupied, boot loaded
- 3 Driver's seat occupied, boot loaded

1 For the Full LED headlights, the headlight range control is adjusted automatically.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

An incorrectly adjusted headlight range can cause insufficient vehicle lighting or can dazzle other road users.

- ▶ Adjust the headlight range correctly.

Adjust headlights for driving in right / left-hand traffic

Applies to full LED headlights.

- › In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR >  > 

Or:

MENU >  >  > 

- › Activate the travel mode function.

Troubleshooting**Turn signal light defective**

 flashes faster - turn signal light on the right defective

- › Check the turn signal light on the right.

 flashes faster - turn signal light on the left defective

- › Check the turn signal light on the left.

 does not flash when the trailer is hitched - trailer turn signal light defective

- › Check the trailer lighting.

Light bulb or LED bulb is defective

 or  illuminates

Information appears in the display regarding the defective lights.

- › Replace the defective bulb.
- › In case of a defective LED bulb, contact a specialist garage for help.

The headlights are misted up on the inside

Inside the headlights, moisture may occur. This is not a defect.

Malfunction of the automatic headlight circuit

- › Clean the windscreen in the area of the rain/light sensor.

Beam of light in front of the vehicle has shortened

Headlight defective.

- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driving lights defective

If a message regarding the failed driving lights is displayed, the light will work in emergency mode.

- › Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

COMING HOME, LEAVING HOME exterior lighting**Functionality**

The COMING HOME function turns on the light after turning off the ignition and opening the driver's door. The light switches off automatically after the set lighting time has elapsed.

The LEAVING HOME function switches on the light when unlocking the vehicle with the wireless remote control.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Visibility has worsened.
- ✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.

Settings

This function is set in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR >  > 

Or:

MENU >  >  > 

Light Assist high-beam assist system**Functionality**

The high beam assist system automatically switches the high beam on and off.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

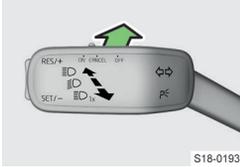
- ▶ If necessary, manually switch the high beam on or off.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The system is activated.
- ✓ The light switch is in the **AUTO** position.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.

Operation

Switching on



- › Push the lever in the direction of the arrow.

It lights up in the instrument cluster  from the isolation box.

S18-0193

Switching off

- › Manually switch the high beam on or off.

Function restriction

The system may dazzle other road users if their headlights/lights are not detected for the following reasons, for example:

- ▶ The headlights/lights of oncoming vehicles are covered by crash barriers, for example.
- ▶ The headlamps/lights of the oncoming or preceding vehicle are dirty or not functioning.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

The function is activated or deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR ›  › 

Or:

MENU ›  ›  › 

Activation/deactivation

The function is activated or deactivated as follows in the Infotainment system in the menu **MENU** ›  ›  › 

Replace light bulbs

What you should be mindful of

DIY replacement of the following bulbs is possible. Have the remaining light sources replaced by a specialist garage.

The new bulb must conform to the specification of the original light bulb. The name of the bulb is marked on the bulb socket.

① NOTICE

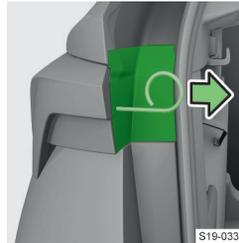
Danger of headlight damage due to the ingress of water and dirt!

- ▶ Always fit the protective cap on the headlight correctly after changing a bulb.

Conditions for changing a bulb

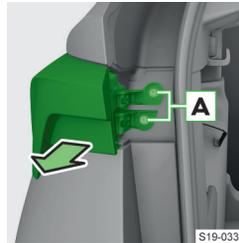
- ✓ Ignition off
- ✓ Light switched off

Rear turn signal



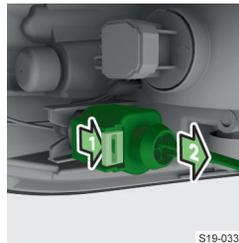
- › Remove the cover with the bracket from the tool kit.

S19-0333



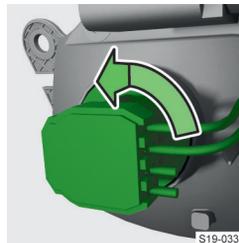
- › Unscrew  screws A and remove the lamp.

S19-0334



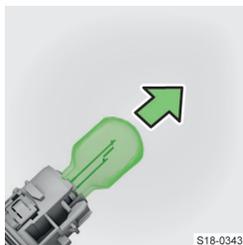
- › Press the lock mechanisms on the connector and remove the connector.

S19-0335



- › Turn and remove the socket with the bulb.

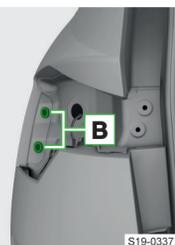
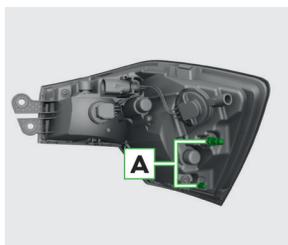
S19-0336



S18-0343

- › Change the bulb in the socket.
- › Push the base with the new light bulb into the luminaire so that the guide lugs on the base and the associated openings in the luminaire are flush.
- › Turn the socket clockwise  to secure.

- › Insert the connector into the light until it clicks into place.



S19-0337

- › Insert the lamp with the cones  screws into the openings  in the body.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the electrical system!

- ▶ Make sure that the lines between the lamp and the body are not pinched when the lamp is inserted.
- › Screw on the lamp.
- › Fit the cover of the light, ensuring it clicks into place.

Reversing light

- › Open the boot lid.



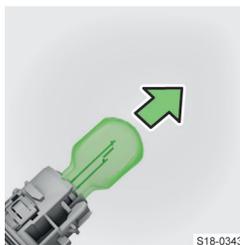
S18-0341

- › Release and remove the cover cap in the boot lid.



S18-0342

- › Turn and remove the socket with the bulb.



S18-0343

- › Change the bulb in the socket.
- › Push the base with the new light bulb into the luminaire so that the guide lugs on the base and the associated openings in the luminaire are flush.
- › Turn the socket clockwise  to secure.

- › Insert the cover cap until it clicks into place.

Interior lighting

Operation

Switching on automatically

The lighting switches on when one of the following events occurs.

- ▶ The vehicle is unlocked
- ▶ One of the doors is opened
- ▶ The ignition key is removed (vehicle without starter button)

Automatic switch off

The lighting switches off when one of the following events occurs:

- ▶ The vehicle is locked
- ▶ The ignition is switched on
- ▶ About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed

Operation of the lighting

Middle position of the switches	Automatically switch on and switch off
	Turn the front and rear lights on/off
	Deactivation of automatic activation
	Reading lamp left
	Reading lamp right

i If a door remains open and the ignition is switched off, the lights will turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

Automatic switching on/off of the footwell lighting

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

The lighting is also switched on automatically after opening the door (e.g. when getting in or out).

Settings

The brightness level of the footwell lighting is set in the Infotainment in the following menu when the low beam or parking light is switched on:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Interior ambient light

Usage

The ambient lighting ensures a comfortable atmosphere in the vehicle interior.

The lighting only works when the dipped or parking lights are on.

The lighting is also switched on automatically after opening the door.

Settings

The background lighting brightness settings are set in the Infotainment system, in the following menu:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Windscreen wipers and washers

Operating conditions

Operating conditions for windscreen wipers

- ✓ Engine compartment flap closed
- ✓ Boot lid closed
- ✓ Ignition on

Operating conditions for the windscreen washer system

- ✓ Engine compartment flap closed
- ✓ Boot lid closed

Operation

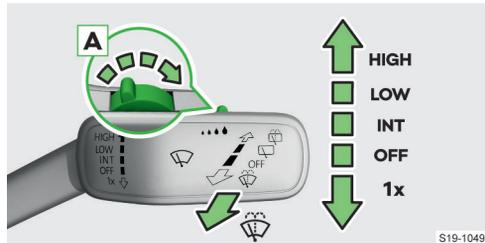
⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

At low temperatures, windscreen washer fluid can freeze on the windscreen and restrict visibility.

- ▶ Only use the windscreen washer when the windscreen is warm.

Wipe and wash the windscreen



HIGH Fast wiping

LOW Slow wiping

INT Depending upon vehicle equipment:

- ▶ Intermittent wiping
- ▶ Automatic wiping controlled by the rain sensor

OFF Switching off

1x Tip-wiping (spring-loaded position)

A Setting the wiping speed for the position INT

Washing and wiping (spring-loaded position)

The windscreen washer nozzles of the windscreen are automatically heated together with the exterior mirrors.

Clean headlights

When the headlights are switched on, they are cleaned the first time and after every tenth wash of the windscreen. Setting the spray interval can be carried out by a specialist garage.

Wipe and wash the rear window



Spring-loaded position:

- ▶ Washing and wiping the windscreen
- ▶ Cleaning the rear view camera

Wiping

OFF Switching off

Automatic rear window wiping

When the windscreen wipers are switched on, the rear window is automatically wiped when the reverse gear is engaged.

Settings

Activating/deactivating automatic wiping

The functions for automatic rear window wiping and automatic wiping in the rain can be activated and deactivated in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Refilling windscreen washer fluid

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Use windscreen washer fluid that is suitable for the weather conditions.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen washer system!

- ▶ When refilling the washer fluid, do not remove the strainer from the neck of the container.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the headlights!

- ▶ Only use washer fluid that does not attack polycarbonates.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to engine compartment components!

- ▶ Close the container after refilling the windscreen washer fluid.

The windscreen washer tank is located in the engine compartment » [page 12](#).

The container can hold a volume of 3 litres and 4 litres for vehicles with a headlight cleaning system.



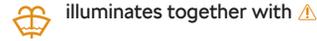
Sealing cap of the tank

- ▶ Open the engine compartment lid » [page 146](#).

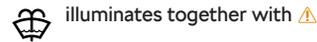
- ▶ Gently open the top of the sealing cap.
- ▶ Top up the windscreen washer fluid.
- ▶ Close the sealing cap of the tank.

Troubleshooting

Windscreen washer fluid level too low



or



- ▶ Top up the windscreen washer fluid.

Frozen windscreen wipers

- ▶ Carefully remove frozen windscreen wipers from the windscreen before switching on the ignition and free them from snow and ice.

Folding down windscreen wiper arms and replacing windscreen wiper blades

For folding down the windscreen wiper from the screen you must first adjust the wiper arms to the folded position.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the windscreen wipers and the engine compartment lid!

- ▶ Close the bonnet before lowering the wiper arms from the window.
- ▶ Do not turn on the ignition when the windscreen wiper arms are folded away.

Set the windscreen wiper arms into the folding position

- ▶ Switch the ignition on and off again.



- ▶ Within 10 seconds, press the control lever down and hold for about 2 seconds.

Replace the windscreen wiper blade

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of accident!

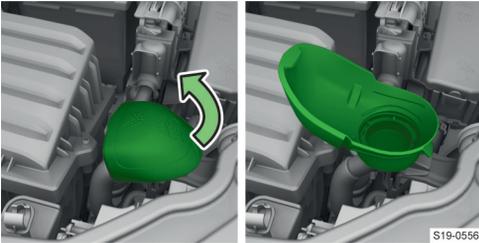
- ▶ Change the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year.
- ▶ Fold the windscreen wiper arm away from the windscreen.



S18-0411

- › Press the catch and remove the wiper blade.
- › Insert the new wiper blade until it clicks into place.
- › Fold the windscreen wiper arm back onto the windscreen.
- › Turn on the ignition and push the control lever down.

Cap for refilling the windscreen washer fluid

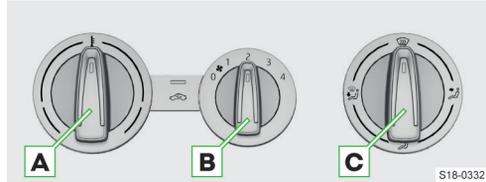


S19-0556

Heating and air conditioning system

Heating

Overview of the heating operation components



S18-0332

- A** Set the temperature
 - B** Set the blower speed
 - C** Set the direction of the air outlet
- ☞ Switch recirculated air mode on/off

- ⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of misting!
▶ Always keep the fan on.

Manual air conditioning

What you should be mindful of

- ▶ We recommend keeping the interior temperature no more than 5 °C lower than the outdoor temperature.
- ▶ We recommend switching the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.
- ▶ Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

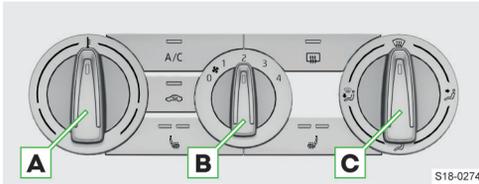
- ⚠ **WARNING**
Danger of misting!
▶ Always keep the fan on.

- ⚠ **WARNING**
Risk of accident!
In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.
- ▶ Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Operating conditions for the cooling system

- ✓ Outside temperature above 2 °C
- ✓ Running engine
- ✓ Fan switched on

Overview of the controls for the manual air conditioning



- A** Set the temperature
- B** Set the blower speed
- C** Set the direction of the air outlet

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

- Switch recirculated air mode on/off
- Switch on/off the windscreen heating » page 53, *Operation*
- Switch the seat heating on/off » page 53, *Operation*

Cooling system

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

i After pressing the **A/C** button, the indicator light in the button illuminates, even if the conditions for switching on the cooling system are not met. The cooling system switches on when the conditions for switching on the cooling system are met.

Automatic activation of the cooling system

Automatic activation of the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up. The system switches on in the following cases.

- ▶ When the fan is on and the air distribution controller is in the position.
In this case, the recirculation mode is switched off and cannot be switched on.
- ▶ When the air distribution controller is not in the position, and recirculated air mode is switched on.

Recirculated air mode

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.

Briefly switching on recirculation mode can increase the cooling effect.

- i** Under certain circumstances, the recirculation mode may be switched on or off automatically.
- i** When the air conditioner is operating, the engine idle speed may increase automatically.

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

- › Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and set the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic switch-off of the cooling system

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

Climatronic automatic air conditioning system

What you should be mindful of

- ▶ We recommend keeping the interior temperature no more than 5 °C lower than the outdoor temperature.
- ▶ We recommend switching the cooling system off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey to prevent odour formation.
- ▶ Annual disinfection of the air conditioning is recommended.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of misting!

- ▶ Always keep the fan on.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

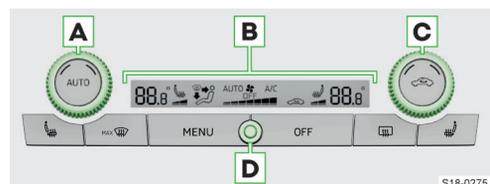
In recirculation mode, there is no fresh air supply from the outside. This can result in loss of driver attention and fogging up of windows.

- ▶ Keep the recirculation mode switched on for a short time only.

Operating conditions for the cooling system

- ✓ Outside temperature above 2 °C
- ✓ Running engine
- ✓ Fan switched on

Operation



- A** Set the temperature for the left side
- B** Climatronic display
- C** Set the temperature for the right side
- D** Interior temperature sensor

AUTO Press - Switch on automatic mode

This function keeps the temperature constant and prevents the windows from misting.

Hold - Maintain the interior temperature in accordance with the temperature setting for the driver side (SYNC function)

-  Switch recirculated air mode on/off
The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle.
-  Switch the seat heating on/off » page 53, *Operation*
-  Switch the windscreen ventilation/defrosting mode on/off
- MENU** Operate Climatronic in the Infotainment system
- OFF** Switch Climatronic on / off
-  Switch on/off the windscreen heating » page 53, *Operation*

I After pressing the **A/C** button, the indicator light in the button illuminates, even if the conditions for switching on the cooling system are not met. The cooling system switches on when the conditions for switching on the cooling system are met.

With a temperature setting outside of the number range, one of the following icons will be displayed in the Climatronic display:

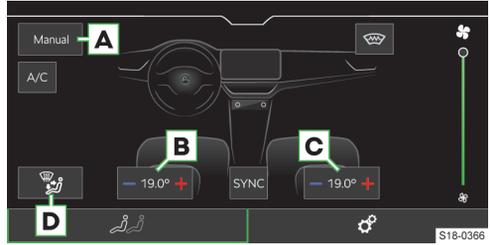
- LO** Maximum cooling power
- HI** Maximum heating power

I When the air conditioner is operating, the engine idle speed may increase automatically.

Settings

Display the settings menu

- › Tap the **MENU** button on the Climatronic.
- Or:
- › Tap on **MENU** ›  in the Infotainment screen.



- A** Select Climatronic mode
- B** Set the temperature for the left side
- C** Set the temperature for the right side
- D** Set the direction of the air outlet in manual mode

A/C Switch the cooling system on/off

When the cooling system is switched on, the temperature and humidity in the vehicle will drop.

Switching on the cooling system prevents the windows from misting up.

-  Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 53, *Operation*
-  According to the selected Climatronic mode:
 - ▶ Manual mode - Set the blower speed
 - ▶ Automatic mode - Set the operating power

SYNC Switch maintenance of the interior temperature on/off according to the temperature setting for the driver's side

Further Climatronic settings

- › To make further settings, press the **MENU** button on the Climatronic ›, tap on  in the Infotainment screen.
 - ▶ *Automatic supplementary heater* - Switch fast interior heating on/off
 - ▶ *Automatic windscreen heating* - Switch on/off the automatic windscreen heating

Troubleshooting

Water under the vehicle

When the cooling system is switched on, water can drip off the air conditioning system. This is not a leak.

Fogging

- › Switch on automatic mode.
- Or:
- › Increase the blower speed, switch on the cooling system, and set the air distribution to the windscreen.

Automatic switch-off of the cooling system

If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system may switch off automatically. This ensures sufficient engine cooling.

Heated windscreen**Usage**

Windscreen heating is used for defrosting or ventilating the windscreen.

Requirements

- ✓ Running engine
- ✓ Outside temperature approximately below 35 °C

Operation**Heated rear window**

- › Press the  button.

Heated windscreen

- › Press the key **MENU** on the Climatronic panel › , tap in the Infotainment screen.

Or:

- › Tap on **MENU** ›  ›  in the Infotainment screen.

Windscreen heating switches off automatically after some time.

If the engine is switched off when the heating is on and turned back on again within about 10 minutes, the heating is continued.

Settings**Automatic heated windscreen**

The heated windscreen switches on automatically if the windscreen mists up.

- › Press the button **MENU** on the Climatronic control panel ›, tap  in the Infotainment screen.

Or:

- › Tap on **MENU** ›  ›  in the Infotainment screen.

Troubleshooting**The indicator light in the button or below the button flashes**

The heating does not work as the battery charging level of the 12 volt vehicle battery is too low.

Seat heating**What you should be mindful of****⚠ WARNING**

Risk of burns!

- ▶ Do not switch on the seat heater for persons with limited perception of pain or temperature.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of seat damage!

- ▶ Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- ▶ Do not turn on the heater in the following situations:
 - ▶ The seat is not occupied.
 - ▶ There are objects on the seat, such as a child seat.
 - ▶ There are additional seat covers or protective covers on the seat.

Requirements

- ✓ Running engine

Operation

- › Press the  or  button on the Climatronic to switch on the front seat heating.
- › Press the  or  button in the rear centre console to switch on the rear seat heating.

The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

The heat output is determined by the number of illuminated indicator lights that are shown in the button or in the Climatronic display.

If the heating is switched on with maximum heat output, the heating power is automatically lowered after 10 minutes.

Heated steering wheel**Requirements**

- ✓ Running engine

Operation

- › Press the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The heating is switched on with maximum heating output. By repeatedly pressing the button, the heating output is reduced until it is switched off.

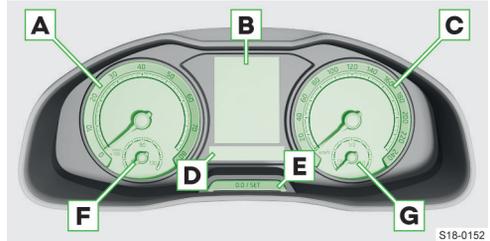
i By holding down the button  on the multifunction steering wheel, the heating can be switched off or switched on at the level of the heating output that was set before the heating was switched off.

Driver information system

Analogue instrument cluster

Overview

Overview of instrument cluster



- A** Tachometer with indicator lights
- B** Display
- C** Speedometer with indicator lights
- D** Bar with indicator lights
- E** Multifunction button:
 - ▶ Setting the time
 - ▶ Reset odometer (trip)
 - ▶ Show distance and days until next service appointment
- F** Depending on equipment fitted
 - ▶ Coolant temperature gauge
 - ▶ Gas gauge
- G** Petrol/diesel fuel gauge

! NOTICE

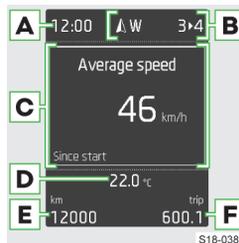
Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

▶ **Never run the fuel tank completely empty!**

i In poor visibility and with dipped headlights off, the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting is reduced to remind the driver to turn on the light.

Display overview

Depending on the equipment, the following information is shown in the display.



- A** Time
- B** Selected gear/gear recommendation
Also included depending on vehicle equipment:
 - ▶ Compass direction display
 - ▶ Automatic gearbox selector lever positions

tions

- C** Menu, indicator lights and information
- D** Outside temperature
 - ❄ - low outside temperature
- E** Total distance travelled
- F** Trip - Distance travelled after resetting the memory

Overview of the main menu items

- ▶ Driving data » page 57, *Overview*
- ▶ Assist systems - Activate/deactivate assist systems
- ▶ Navigation - e.g. Display driving recommendations, compass, list of destination
- ▶ Audio - Using radio and media
- ▶ Telephone - Call list, accept or reject an incoming call
- ▶ Vehicle - Vehicle condition » page 58, *Display*.

Operation

Operation via the control lever

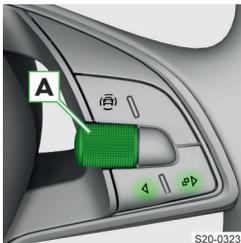


S18-0159

- A** Press - Switch between menu items/set values
- Hold** - Show main menu
- B** Press - Confirm the menu item

menu item

Operation via the multifunction steering wheel



S20-0323

- A** Turn - Switch between menu items/set values
- Press** - Confirm the menu item
- ◀ **Press** - Return to the menu one level higher
- Hold** - Show main menu

▶ **Press** - Show previous menu (if one has been selected) / Show telephone menu

Settings

Setting the language

The language is set in the Infotainment in menu **MENU** > ⚙.

Resetting the odometer



▶ Briefly press the button in the instrument cluster.

Setting the time



▶ Press and hold the button in the instrument cluster until the menu item *Time* is displayed.

- ▶ Release the button, the display shows the hour setting.
- ▶ Press the button repeatedly to set the hours.
- ▶ Wait 4 seconds, the display shows the minute setting.
- ▶ Press the key repeatedly to set the minutes.
- ▶ Wait 4 seconds, the display shows the initial setting.

The time is also set in the Infotainment in menu **MENU** > ⚙.

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness of the instrument lighting is adjusted automatically according to the given lighting conditions.

When low beam is switched on, the brightness of the instruments lighting can be adjusted in the following menu in the Infotainment system:

CAR > ⚙ > ☀

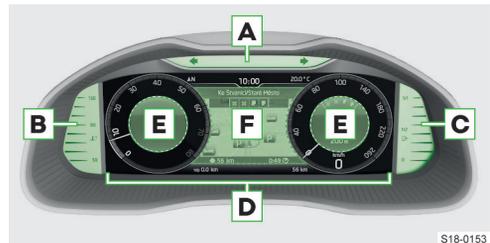
Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⚙ > ☀

Digital instrument cluster

Overview

Overview of instrument cluster



S18-0153

- A** Bar with indicator lights
- B** Coolant temperature gauge
- C** Fuel gauge
- D** Display
- E** Additional information
- F** Central display area

ⓘ **NOTICE**

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

▶ **Never run the fuel tank completely empty!**

Overview of the main menu items

- ▶ Driving data » page 57, Overview
- ▶ Assist systems - Activate/deactivate assist systems
- ▶ Navigation - e.g. Display driving recommendations, compass, list of destination
- ▶ Audio - Using radio and media
- ▶ Telephone - Call list, accept or reject an incoming call
- ▶ Vehicle - Vehicle condition » page 58, Display.

Operation



- A** **Rotate** - Switch between menu items/Set values/Manually change map scale
- Press** - Confirm the menu item
- Turn and press** - Activate automatic map scale changing

Press - Return to the menu one level higher

Hold - Show main menu

⌂ **Press** - Change the variant of the display

Hold - Display the menu of preset options with additional information

The brightness is adjusted with the dipped beam switched on in the infotainment in the following menu:

CAR > ⌂ > ☀

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > ⌂ > ☀

Set the variant of the display

- ▶ Press the ⌂ button on the multifunction steering wheel to change the variant of the display presentation.

Select displayed variants

- ▶ Press and hold the ⌂ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- ▶ Select and confirm the menu item for the display variants.
- ▶ Select one of the following variants of the display and confirm.



Settings

Setting the language

The language is set in the Infotainment in menu **MENU** > ⌂.

Resetting the odometer in the instrument cluster

- ▶ Select Trip in the menu in instrument cluster display.



- A** **Turn** - Select information
- Press** - Confirm information
- Hold** - Reset counter

Setting the time

The time is set in the Infotainment in menu **MENU** > ⌂.

Setting the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting

The brightness is adjusted automatically according to the given lighting conditions.

- A** Classic display
- B** Advanced display
- C** Modern display
- D** Basic display
- E** Sporty display (depending on equipment)

Choose display of additional information

- ▶ Press and hold the ⌂ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- ▶ Select and confirm one of the following prefix options (the scope of the prefix options depends on the type of Infotainment):
 - ▶ **Auto** - Information depending on the selected driving mode
 - ▶ **Classic** - Information about the selected gear and the current speed
 - ▶ Adjustable pre-selection options.

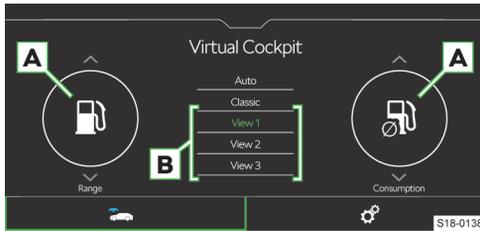
Setting the pre-selection option for the display of additional information

The pre-selection option for displaying additional information is set in the Infotainment system in the following menu:

CAR > 🚗 > Menu item for the virtual cockpit

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for the virtual cockpit



- › Select the desired additional information in the **A** areas.
- › The desired function area for the preselection option in the area **B** hold to save the selection (the scope of the preset options depends on the type of Infotainment).

Driving data

Overview

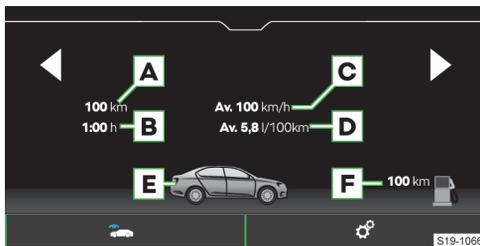
The driving data display works with the ignition switched on.

In the instrument cluster display

Depending on the equipment, the display of the instrument cluster shows information such as speed, fuel consumption, range, etc.

f For natural gas vehicles, the display of the instrument cluster shows the natural gas quality in percent from 70 % to 100 %. The higher the value, the lower the consumption of natural gas.

In Infotainment



- A** Distance travelled
- B** Driving time
- C** Average speed
- D** Average fuel consumption
- E** Graphical fuel gauge - If the expected range is less than 300 km, the vehicle slowly approaches the symbol

F Range (for natural gas vehicles, the range with petrol, CNG and the sum of the ranges with both fuel types are displayed separately).

Memory

The system saves the driving data in the following memories:

Since start

- ▶ Driving data from the time of switching on the ignition until the ignition is switched off again is stored in the memory. If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the memory will be reset.

Long-term

- ▶ The driving data of all trips up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes driving time or 9999 km driving distance is stored in the memory. If one of the listed values is exceeded, the memory is reset.

Since refuel

- ▶ Driving data from the time the fuel tank was last filled is stored in the memory. The memory is reset the next time the tank is filled.

Operation

Display driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the operating lever

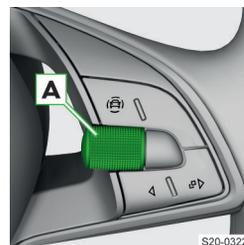
- › Select the menu item for the driving data in the main menu in the instrument cluster display.



- A** Press - Select information/Set values
- B** Press - Confirm information

Display driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multi-functional steering wheel

- › Select the menu item for the driving data in the main menu in the instrument cluster display.



- A** Rotate - Select information/Set values
- Press - Confirm information

Displaying driving data in the infotainment system

The driving data is displayed in the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > > Menu item for driving data

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for the driving data

Select and reset the memory for driving data in the display of the instrument cluster using the control lever



- ▶ To **select** the memory for the displayed driving data, press button **A** repeatedly.
- ▶ To **reset** the memory, press and hold button **A**.

A.

Select memory for driving data in the display of the instrument cluster via the multifunction steering wheel and reset it



- ▶ To **select** the memory for the displayed driving data, press control wheel **A** repeatedly.
- ▶ To **reset** the memory, hold the dial **A**.

Selecting the memory in the infotainment system

To select the memory, use the functional areas ◀ ▶ in the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > 🚗 > Menu item for driving data

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🚗 > Menu item for the driving data

Resetting the memory in the infotainment system

The memory is reset in the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > 🚗 > 🚗

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🚗 > 🚗

Settings

Select driving data to be displayed

The driving data to be displayed is selected in the following Infotainment menu:

CAR > 🚗 > 🚗

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🚗 > 🚗

Setting units

The units are set in the following infotainment menu:

CAR > 🚗 > 🚗

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🚗 > 🚗

Speed limit warning

Usage

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an acoustic warning signal will sound and the following warning message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Settings

Setting the speed limit

- ▶ Select *Warning at* or Ⓢ (depending on the display type) and confirm.
- ▶ **When the vehicle is stationary**, set the desired speed limit and confirm.
- ▶ **While driving**, drive at the desired speed and confirm it as the speed limit.

Resetting the speed limit

- ▶ Select *Warning at* or Ⓢ (depending on the display type) and confirm.
- ▶ To reset the speed limit, confirm the stored value.

If the journey is interrupted for more than 2 hours, the set limit is deactivated, but the set value remains stored.

Vehicle status

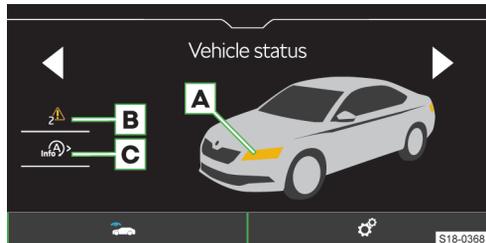
Display

The vehicle status is displayed in the following menu in the infotainment system:

CAR > 🚗 > Menu item for the vehicle status

Or:

MENU > 🚗 > 🚗 > Menu item for the vehicle status



- A** Vehicle areas displayed in colour indicate associated warnings
- B** ✓ No notification
⚠ Warning messages regarding the vehicle condition and their quantity
- C** 🚗 Info > Display of information about the condition of the START-STOP system

- ▶  /  Activation/deactivation of information regarding the messages of the START-STOP system in another screen display

Functionality

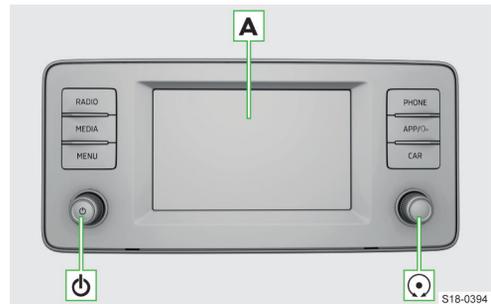
In the event of a system fault, messages regarding the fault in question are displayed on the instrument cluster display when the ignition is switched on.

Messages in relation to faults can also be displayed in the Infotainment.

 The warning messages will continue to be displayed until the malfunctions have been remedied. After the first display of the message, only the indicator lights  (Hazard) or  (Warning) are displayed.

Infotainment Swing

Infotainment overview



-  Touchscreen
-  Control dial left
 - ▶ **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
 - ▶ **Turn:** Set volume
-  Control dial right
 - ▶ **Press:** Confirm menu item
 - ▶ **Turn:** select menu item/set value

RADIO Radio menu

MEDIA Media menu

MENU Overview of Infotainment menus

PHONE Phone menu

APP/☺ SmartLink menu

- ▶ **Press:** Display menu

- ▶ **Hold:** Switch voice control of the SmartLink application on / off

CAR Information about vehicle settings

System

Limitation

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** >  menu:

- ▶ Time and date
- ▶ Language
- ▶ Units
- ▶ Restore factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment sound is set in the menu **MENU** > .

The following menu items can be set:

- ▶ Setting the equalizer
- ▶ Adjusting the volume ratio
- ▶ Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions

The volume can be adjusted on e.g. one of the following menu items:

- ▶ Volume adjustment of voice commands
- ▶ Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on
- ▶ Speed-dependent volume setting
- ▶ Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set

- ▶ Setting space optimisation
- ▶ Setting the audio profiles according to genre
- ▶ Adjusting the subwoofer volume

Configuration wizard

The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed if the ignition is switched on and if there are at least two menu items that have not been set up after switching on the Infotainment.

- ▶ To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration assistant is displayed tap *Don't show again*.
- ▶ For **manual display** tap **MENU** >  > *Configuration wizard*.

Set up menu MENU

The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows:

- ▶ Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.
- ▶ Move the functional surface to a different position.

Safely disconnect the connected USB device

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected USB device!

To safely disconnect a USB device, proceed as follows:

- ▶ **MENU** >  > *Remove safely*.
- ▶ Select the desired device.
- ▶ Disconnect the USB device.

ⓘ If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding

If the infotainment does not respond, restart it as follows:

- ▶ Hold  for longer than 10 s.
- ▶ Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

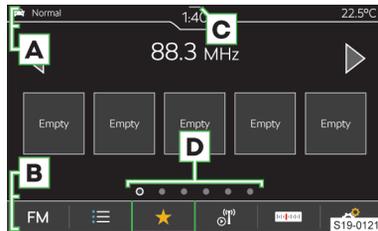
The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

Determine system version

- ▶ Tap **MENU** >  > *System information*.

Screen

Overview



- A** Status bar
- B** Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
- C** Display of the control centre
- D** Other pages of the menu

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

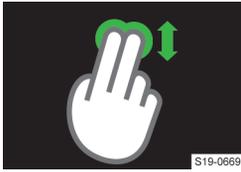
Danger of screen damage!

- ▶ The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Dragging up or down with two fingers



- ▶ Quickly review the list of phone contacts

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > Screen:

- ▶ Brightness level of the screen
- ▶ Switch off the screen
- ▶ Display the time
- ▶ Confirmation sounds and animations

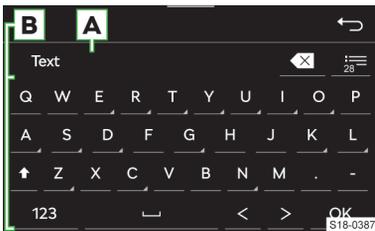
Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Depending on the context, the following types are used in infotainment:

- ▶ Alphanumeric
- ▶ Numeric
- ▶ Keyboard for input
- ▶ Keyboard for search

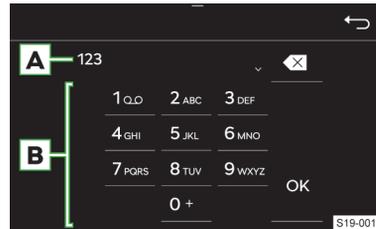


Keypad example

- A** Input line
 - ▶ Delete characters before the cursor
 - ▶ **Tap:** delete the last character
 - ▶ **Hold:** delete all characters one after the other
- Show list of searched entries
- B** Keypad functional surfaces
 - ▶ Switch to lowercase/uppercase
 - ▶ **ABC/ABB** Switch to the language keypad
 - ▶ **123** Switch to the numeric and character keypad
 - ▶ Show additional keyboard languages
 - ▶ Insert spaces

- ▶ **Hold:** Show more character variants
- ▶ **<** Move cursor to the left
- ▶ **>** Move cursor to the right
- ▶ **OK** Confirm the entered characters

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

- A** Input line
 - ▶ Delete characters before the cursor
 - ▶ **Tap:** delete the last character
 - ▶ **Hold:** delete all characters
- B** Keypad functional surfaces
 - ▶ **OK** Confirm the entered characters

i If it is possible depending on the context, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a function area with the number.

Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

Find

During the character input, a search for corresponding entries takes place.

The entry to be searched can be entered, including diacritics.

The keypad will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

- › To **display the searched entries**, tap .

Show additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

- › Tap or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

- › Press and hold the sign with the symbol .
- › Select the desired symbol.

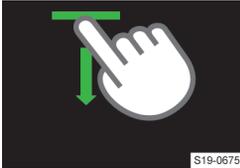
Setting up additional keyboard languages

- › Tap **MENU** › › Additional keypad languages.

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



- › Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

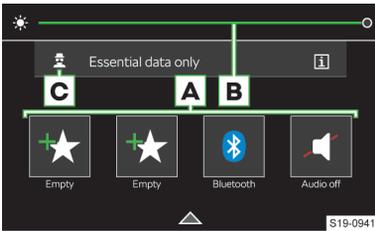
- › Tap on .

Or:

- › Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



- A** Preferred functions
- B** Setting the instrument and key illumination
- C** Setting the personal data protection level

Settings

- › To **display** editing mode hold any function surface of the preferred feature.
- › To **add** the preferred feature, move the desired feature from the top of the screen to the functional surface at the bottom of the screen.
- › To **close** edit mode, tap on .

Radio

Overview

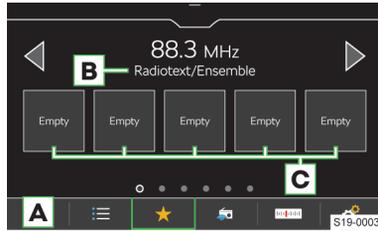
Display menu

- › Tap **RADIO**.

Or:

- › Tap **MENU** › .

Analogue and digital radio reception



- A** Select frequency range
- B** Depending on the frequency range
FM: Radio text
DAB: Radio text: name of the station group
- C** Station buttons for preferred stations
 List of available stations
 Show favourites
 Show information about the station
 Search stations manually (valid for AM and FM)
 Settings

i Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

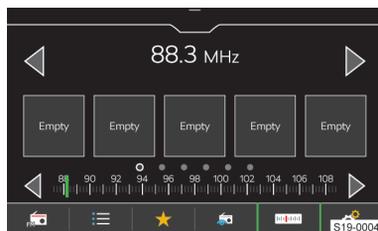
List of available stations

- › Tap on .
- Played station
- Station stored on the presets
- TP** A traffic radio station is set
- DAB signal is not available
- Filter the stations in the list according to the programme type, e.g. culture, music, sports, etc.
FM: when the RDS function is switched on
- Manual update of the station list

In the station list, information about the program type and the type of the regional station can be displayed.

Operation

Select station



- › Tap or at the top of the screen.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

- › To **start automatic play** press  > Scan or the right rotary control .
- › To **end automatic play** press  or the right rotary control .

Find stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

- › In the Radio main menu, tap .
- › To **search in sequence**, tap  or  next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

- › Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Or:

- › Turn the right rotary control.

Limitation

- ▶ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
- ▶ Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
- ▶ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.
Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.
- ▶ The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings

Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu

- › Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

- › Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
- › Tap the desired preset button.

Deleting favourites

- › In the menu **Radio**  > *clear memory* .
- › To delete **a** station button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.
- › To delete **all** station buttons for preferred stations *Tap All* and confirm the deletion.

Function surfaces

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface   in the **Radio** menu is set as follows:

- › In the menu **Radio**  > *Arrow buttons* .
- › Choose the change variant.

Traffic reception (TP) for FM stations on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

- › In the menu **Radio**  > *Traffic program (TP)* .

Switch traffic reception for DAB stations on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

- › In the **Radio** menu switch on the menu item  > *Traffic program (TP)* switch on
- › In the menu **Radio**  > *Advanced settings* > *DAB: Traffic program (TP)* switch on / off

Assigning a station logo

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option to assign logos from the pictures on an external source to the station buttons.

For station logos, images in jpg, gif, png, bmp format with a maximum resolution of 500x500 pixels can be used.

- › In the menu **Radio**  > *Station logos* .
- › Tap the desired preset button.
- › Select the external source with the logo.
- › Find the desired logo and confirm.

Delete station logos

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

- › In the menu **Radio**  > *Station logos* .
- › To delete **a** logo, tap the desired preset button and confirm the deletion.
- › To delete **all** logos *Tap All* and confirm the deletion.

Switch on/off autostore of logos for stations to be stored to Favourites

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

- › In the menu **Radio**  > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic storage station logos* .

Regional FM station logo

Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

- › In the menu **Radio**  > *Advanced settings* > *Region for station logo* .
- › Choose country.

Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and station presets are displayed, detailed information about the broadcast content of the station being listened to, or the name of the station group for the DAB station, is displayed.

› In the menu **Radio**  > Radio text .

Switch automatic frequency control (AF) on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, Infotainment automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

› In the menu **Radio**  > Advanced settings > Automatic frequency change (AF) .

Automatic change of frequency to a regionally linked FM station

Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of automatically switching to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss of the FM station being listened to.

› In the menu **Radio**  > Advanced settings > RDS Regional .

› Select one of the following menu items:

- ▶ Fix - When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
- ▶ Automatic - automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

 If reception is lost in the given region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Sort stations in the list of available stations

Applies to the FM frequency range.

› In the menu **Radio**  > Advanced settings > Station list .

› Select the sorting of stations in alphabetical order or by group.

Switch RDS on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

› In the menu **Radio**  > Advanced settings > Radio Radio Data System (RDS) .

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available:

- ▶ Traffic program (TP)
- ▶ Radio text
- ▶ RDS Regional
- ▶ Automatic frequency change (AF)
- ▶ Regional station logo.
- ▶ Sort stations in the list of available stations

Switch program type display on / off

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

If the function is switched on, additional information on the broadcast program type (PTY) is displayed in the list of available stations. The programs can be filtered based on this information.

Switching additional announcements of the DAB transmitter on / off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

› In the menu **Radio**  > Advanced settings > Tap other DAB announcements .

Enable/disable automatic programme tracking of a DAB station

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same station with a better signal in a different DAB station group.

› In the menu **Radio**  > Advanced settings > DAB - DAB program tracking .

Turn on/off automatic switching from a DAB station to the same FM station

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station being listened to is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same FM station. The symbol (FM) is displayed after the station name.

When the corresponding DAB station can be received again, the station automatically changes from FM to DAB.

› In the menu **Radio**  > Advanced settings > Tap Automatic change DAB - FM .

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

› In the menu **Radio**  > Advanced settings > Change to a similar station .

Switch the slideshow function on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

› In the menu **Radio**  > Advanced settings > DAB slideshow .

Media

What you should be mindful of

- ▶ Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- ▶ When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- ▶ When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- ▶ The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

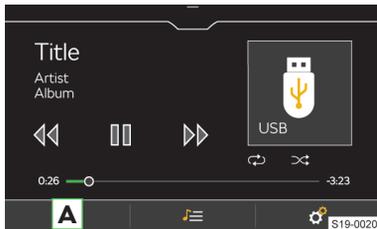
Overview

Display menu

- › Tap **MEDIA**.

Or:

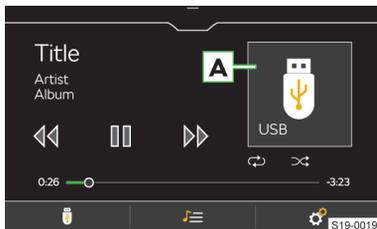
- › Tap **MENU** › **J**.



- A** Choose source
- J** Manage files / multimedia database
- S** Settings

Operating the Player

Operation - Basics



- A** Album image / symbol of the connected source
- ▶ **Tap:** Start playback

- ▢ **Tap:** Pause
- ◀◀ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song
- ◀◀ **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap:** to play the current title from the beginning
- ◀◀ **Hold:** fast rewind within the track
- ▶▶ **Tap:** play the next track
- ▶▶ **Hold:** fast forward within the track

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Extended operation

- ↺ Turn repeat playback of the current track on/off
- ↻ Turn repeat playback of the current album/folder on/off
- ⌘ Turn random playback of the current album/folder on/off

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Settings

Turn title playback including subfolders on/off

- › In the **Media** menu tap on **S** › *Mix/Repeat including subfolders*.

Switch playback of online media from the Apple device on / off

- › To **switching on / off** in the menu **media** **S** › tap *Include online media from the iPod device*.

Media in the Apple iCloud will included in the list of available media under the following conditions:

- ✓ The mobile device is not connected using Apple CarPlay.
- ✓ The mobile device is connected to the Apple iCloud.

Traffic

- › To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu **S** › and tap on *Traffic program (TP)*.

Safely disconnect the connected USB device

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected USB device!

To safely disconnect a USB device, proceed as follows:

- › In the **Media** menu tap on **S** › *Safely remove USB*.
- › Select the desired device.
- › Disconnect the USB device.

ⓘ If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			HDD (without special software)	
		USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol		
		MTP	Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with an iOS operating system	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

ⓘ Apple iAP1 protocol is not supported by Infotainment.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

<http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility>



All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
MPEG	MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3	32 - 320	32, 44, 48	Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 3				
	MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	mp3	8 - 160	8, 11, 12	Mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
WMA	Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	wma	8 - 384	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	Windows Media Audio 9.2		8 - 320		
	Windows Media Audio 10		8 - 768		
ADTS	AAC LC	aac	8 - 640	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, Stereo
	AAC HE		8 - 320		
	AAC HEv2		16 - 64		
FLAC	FLAC	flac	-	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 64, 88, 96	Mono, stereo, 5.1, 7.1
RIFF	WAV	wav	64 - 3072	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
SBC	Bluetooth A2DP	-	8 - 345	44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo

I For files in MP4 format, only the soundtrack playback is carried out.

Files that are protected by **DRM**- and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx
PLA	pls

Mobile device management

Overview

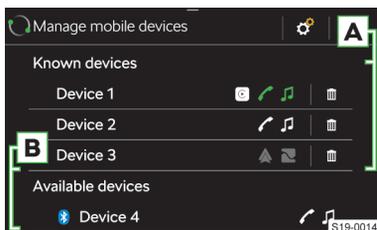
Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

View mobile device management

› **PHONE** > > Select mobile phone Tap > .

Or:

› **MENU** > > Tap Mobile devices .



A Connected / Previously connected devices

B Available devices

- ✔ The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth®“hands-free profile”
- ✔ The device is connected via the Bluetooth®“hands-free profile”
- 🎵 The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile
- 🎵 The device is connected via the Bluetooth® audio profile
- ▲ The device enables a SmartLinkconnection to be made via Android Auto
- 📱 The device enables a SmartLinkconnection to be made via Apple CarPlay
- 📺 The device enables a SmartLinkconnection to be made via MirrorLink
- 🗑️ Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

<http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility>



All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices

Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

Information about ŠKODA applications

Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link:

<http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps>



Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment

- › Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
- › Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found under the menu item **MENU** › › Bluetooth › Name..

- › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device

- › **PHONE** › › Select mobile phone Tap › .
- › Select the desired device in the list of **available devices**.
- › Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
- › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
- › If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously connected mobile device

- › Tap on **PHONE** › › Select mobile phone.
- › Select the desired device from the list of **previously connected devices**.

The selected device is connected via the most recently used Bluetooth® profile.

- › If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types:

- ▲ Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

- › Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
- › Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

Overview

Display menu

- › Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

- › Tap **MENU** › .

i If the menu **phone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.



- A** Name of the connected phone
 - ▶ **Tap:** View the list of previously connected phones
- B** Name of the telephone service provider
- C** Station buttons for preferred contacts
- i** Change the main telephone with the additional telephone
- ☰** Enter phone number
- ☞** Contact list
- ☞** Call lists
- ⓞ** Switch on voice control of the connected phone
- ⚙️** Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

- ✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.
The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > **☞** > Bluetooth > Bluetooth.
- ✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.
The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > **☞** > Bluetooth > Visibility:.
- ✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.
- ✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

- ▶ In the **Phone** menu, tap on **☰**.
 - ▶ Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.
- i** The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.
If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

- ▶ To **display** the contact list in the **phone** menu, tap on **☞**.
- ▶ To **search** within the list, tap on **Find**.
- ▶ Enter the details you wish to find.
- ▶ To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

- ▶ To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

- ▶ In the **Phone** menu, tap on **☰** > **☰**.

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

- 🔴** End connection / reject incoming call / end call
- 🟢** Answer an incoming call / return to the held call
- 🔊/🔇** Switch the ringer off / on
- 🕒** Hold a call
- 🔇/🔊** Switch the microphone off / on
- 👤** Show details of the caller
- 📞** Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

- ▶ To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the telephone**, go to **telephone** in the menu and tap on **☞** > **speakerphone**.
- ▶ To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap **📞**.

Conference call

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

- ▶ Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

- ▶ Accept a new incoming call by tapping **🟢**.
- ▶ To **start** a conference call, tap **📞**.

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context:

- 🕒** Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference will continue in the background)
- 🟢** Return to the held conference call
- 🔇/🔊** Switch the microphone off / on
- 🔴** End conference call
- 👤** Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected.

- 👤 Show details of the conference call participants
- 🔴 End conversation with the conference call participant
- 👤👤 Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Settings for Infotainment telephone functions

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment:

- ▶ **No telephone** - The telephone is connected as a main telephone.
- ▶ **One telephone** - The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.
- ▶ **Two telephones** - Select the telephone to be replaced.
- ▶ To **switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on **☰** in the **Phone** menu.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

- ▶ Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
- ▶ Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found under the menu item **MENU** › **☰** › **Bluetooth** › **Name**.

- ▶ Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired telephone - no telephone is connected

- ▶ Tap on **PHONE**.

Or:

- ▶ Tap on **MENU** › **☰**.
- ▶ Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Connecting Infotainment to a non-paired telephone - another telephone is connected

- ▶ Tap on **PHONE** › **☰** › **Select mobile phone** › **☰**.
- ▶ Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
- ▶ Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
- ▶ Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

- ▶ If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone

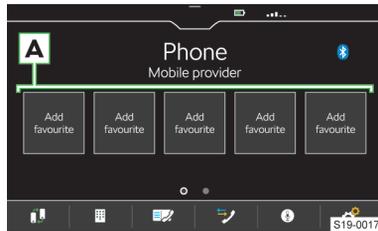
- ▶ **PHONE** › **☰** › **Select mobile phone**.
- ▶ Select the desired device from the list of **previously connected devices**.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

- ▶ If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts



- ▶ To **save** the desired preset button, hold **A**.
- ▶ Select a contact from the displayed list.
- ▶ If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.
- ▶ To **display the menu for deletion**, go to the **phone** menu **☰** and tap on **Manage favourites**.
- ▶ To delete **one** preset, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

- ▶ To delete **all** station buttons, tap **Tap All** and confirm the deletion.

Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 2000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

- ▶ For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** **☰** › menu **User profile** › tap on **Import contacts**.

Sort contacts in the phone book

- ▶ In the **Telephone** **☰** › menu **User profile** › **Sort by**: Tap and select the sorting type.

Ringtone

Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

- › To set the Infotainment ringtone in the **phone** menu, tap  › *User profile* › *select the ringtone* .
- › Select the ringtone.

Voice mailbox number

- › To set the voice mailbox number in the **phone**  menu, tap *User profile* › *Mailbox number* .
- › Enter the voice mailbox number.

Simultaneous calls

This applies to some countries.

Depending on the connected telephone, it is possible to answer the next incoming call and hold the previous call.

- › To switch on simultaneous calls, tap on **telephone**  › *Parallel talks*.

Wi-Fi

Functionality

Wi-Fi can be used for the SmartLink connection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 3 mobile devices.

- › To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** ›  › *Wi-Fi* › *Connected devices* .

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

 Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

- › Turn on the Infotainment Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item **MENU** ›  › *Wi-Fi* › *Wi-Fi hotspot*.
- › Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.
- › In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item **MENU** ›  › *Wi-Fi* › *Network name*.

- › Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item **MENU** ›  › *Wi-Fi* › *Network key*.

- › Confirm the connection.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at WPA2 and cannot be changed.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 8 and a maximum of 63 characters.

- ▶ Tap **MENU** ›  › *Wi-Fi* › *Network key*.
- ▶ Enter the password and confirm.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or Wi-Fi.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types:

- ▶ Android Auto
- ▶ Apple CarPlay
- ▶ MirrorLink

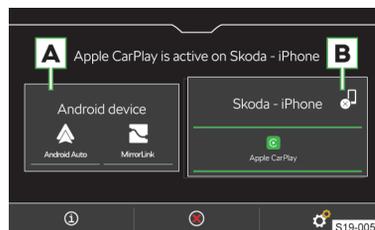
Overview of the SmartLink connection

Menu SmartLink

- › Tap **APP** .

Or:

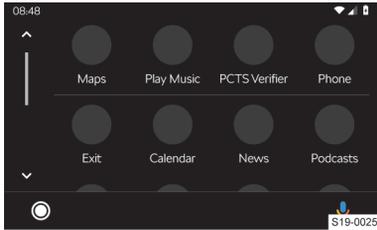
- › Tap **MENU** › .



- A** Previously connected device
- B** Currently connection device

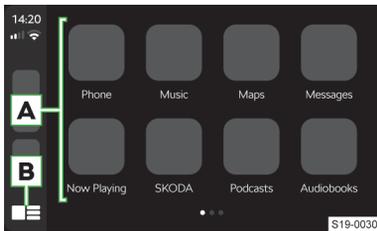
- ④ Display information about SmartLink
- ⊗ Disconnection of the active connection
- 📄 Disconnection of the active connection
- ⚙️ Settings in SmartLink menu

Android Auto



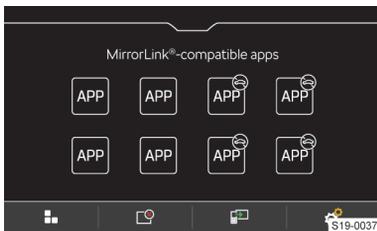
- ⊗ Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
- 🗣️ Turn on voice control (Google Voice)

Apple CarPlay



- A** List of available applications
- B** Depending on the duration of operation:
 - ▶ Tap: Return to the menu Apple CarPlay
 - ▶ Hold: Turn on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink



- ⊗ It is not possible to operate the application while driving
- 📄 Return to the menu SmartLink
- 📄 List of running applications
- 📄 Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices
- ⚙️ Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

- ✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.
- ✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the respective market.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

- ✓ The device to be connected must have Android Auto connection.
- A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connection can be found on the Google, Inc. website.
- ✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.
- ✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

- ✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlay connection.
- A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Apple CarPlay connection can be found on the Apple Inc website.
- ✓ Siri voice control is on.
- ✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

- ✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLink connection.
- A list of devices and applications that support the MirrorLink connection can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consortium®.
- ✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

- 📄 Display of control surfaces at the bottom
- 📄 Display of control surfaces at the top
- 📄 Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

i Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB

- › Turn on the Infotainment.
- › Turn on the mobile device.
- › Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
- › Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

- › Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the mobile device.
- › Tap on **MENU** ›  › *mobile devices*.
- › In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol .
- › Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
- › If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay - Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.
- › In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.
- › Press and hold the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® unit of the Infotainment.

- › Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
- › Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
- › If necessary, confirm the PIN.

- › In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay - Disconnect

- › In the Apple CarPlay menu, tap on the function area “ŠKODA”.
- › Tap on .

Android Auto - Connection via USB

- › Turn on the Infotainment.
- › Turn on the mobile device.
- › Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
- › Choose to connect via Android Auto.

Android Auto - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

- › Tap on **MENU** ›  › *mobile devices*.
- › Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
- › Select the Bluetooth® hands-free profile.
- › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
- › If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
- › From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the .

Android Auto - Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum Android version is 5.
- ✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.

- › Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
- › Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
- › If necessary, confirm the PIN.

- › In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Android Auto.

Android Auto - Disconnect

- › In the Android Auto  menu, tap “Return to SKODA”.
- › Tap on .

MirrorLink - Connection via USB

- › Turn on the Infotainment.
- › Turn on the mobile device.
- › Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
- › Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

MirrorLink - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

- › Turn on Wi-Fi and visibility in the mobile device.

- > Turn on the Infotainment Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item **MENU** >  > Wi-Fi > Wi-Fi hotspot.
- > In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.
- > Enter the required password.
- > With some mobile devices, communication between the device and the Infotainment in the notification bar of the mobile device must be confirmed.
- > Tap on **MENU** >  > mobile devices.
- > From the list of **available devices**, select the desired device with the  symbol.

MirrorLink - Disconnect

- > In the MirrorLink menu, tap on .
- > Tap on .

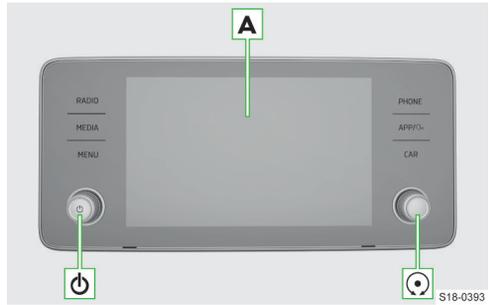
Change to another device / connection type

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

- > Tap on **MENU** > .
- > Select the desired device or connection type.

Infotainment Bolero

Infotainment overview



- A** Touchscreen
-  Control dial left
 - ▶ **Press:** Switch Infotainment on/off
 - ▶ **Turn:** Set volume
-  Control dial right
 - ▶ **Press:** Confirm menu item
 - ▶ **Turn:** select menu item/set value

RADIO Radio menu

MEDIA Media menu

MENU Overview of Infotainment menus

PHONE Phone menu

APP/  SmartLink menu

- ▶ **Tap:** Display menu
- ▶ **Hold:** Switch voice control of the SmartLink application on / off

CAR Information about vehicle settings

System

Limitation

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** >  menu:

- ▶ Time and date
- ▶ Language
- ▶ Units
- ▶ Restore factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment sound is set in the menu **MENU** > .

The following menu items can be set:

- ▶ Setting the equalizer
- ▶ Adjusting the volume ratio
- ▶ Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions

The volume can be adjusted on e.g. one of the following menu items:

- ▶ Volume adjustment of voice commands
- ▶ Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on
- ▶ Speed-dependent volume setting
- ▶ Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set

- ▶ Setting space optimisation
- ▶ Setting the audio profiles according to genre
- ▶ Adjusting the subwoofer volume

Configuration wizard

The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed if the ignition is switched on and if there are at least two menu items that have not been set up after switching on the Infotainment.

- ▶ To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration assistant is displayed tap *Don't show again*.
- ▶ For **manual display** tap **MENU** >  > *Configuration wizard*.

Set up menu MENU

The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows:

- ▶ Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.
- ▶ Move the functional surface to a different position.

Safely disconnect the connected USB device

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected USB device!

To safely disconnect a USB device, proceed as follows:

- ▶ **MENU** >  > *Remove safely*.
- ▶ Select the desired device.
- ▶ Disconnect the USB device.

ⓘ If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding

If the infotainment does not respond, restart it as follows:

- ▶ Hold  for longer than 10 s.
- ▶ Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

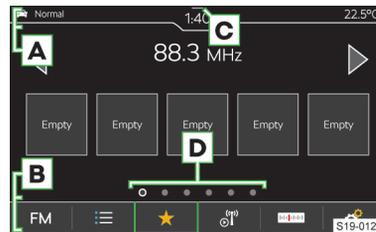
The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

Determine system version

- ▶ Tap **MENU** >  > *System information*.

Screen

Overview



- A** Status bar
- B** Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
- C** Display of the control centre
- D** Other pages of the menu

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

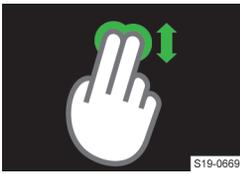
Danger of screen damage!

- ▶ The Infotainment screen is operated by **touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

Dragging up or down with two fingers



- ▶ Quickly review the list of phone contacts

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu **MENU** > > Screen:

- ▶ Brightness level of the screen
- ▶ Switch off the screen
- ▶ Display the time
- ▶ Confirmation sounds and animations

Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Depending on the context, the following types are used in infotainment:

- ▶ Alphanumeric
- ▶ Numeric
- ▶ Keyboard for input
- ▶ Keyboard for search



Keypad example

A Input line

- ▶ Delete characters before the cursor
- ▶ **Tap:** delete the last character
- ▶ **Hold:** delete all characters one after the other

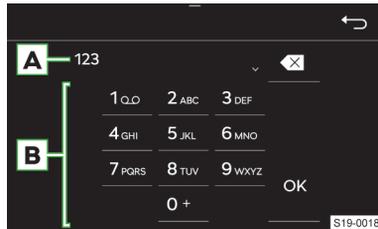
Show list of searched entries

B Keypad functional surfaces

- ▶ Switch to lowercase/uppercase
- ▶ **ABC/A5B** Switch to the language keypad
- ▶ **123** Switch to the numeric and character keypad
- ▶ Show additional keyboard languages
- ▶ Insert spaces

- ▶ **Hold:** Show more character variants
- ▶ **<** Move cursor to the left
- ▶ **>** Move cursor to the right
- ▶ **OK** Confirm the entered characters

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line

- ▶ Delete characters before the cursor
- ▶ **Tap:** delete the last character
- ▶ **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

- ▶ **OK** Confirm the entered characters

I If it is possible depending on the context, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a function area with the number.

Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

Find

During the character input, a search for corresponding entries takes place.

The entry to be searched can be entered, including diacritics.

The keypad will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

- ▶ **To display the searched entries,** tap .

Show additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

- ▶ Tap or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

- ▶ Press and hold the sign with the symbol .
- ▶ Select the desired symbol.

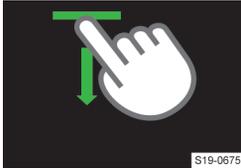
Setting up additional keyboard languages

› Tap **MENU** > > Additional keypad languages.

Control centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



› Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

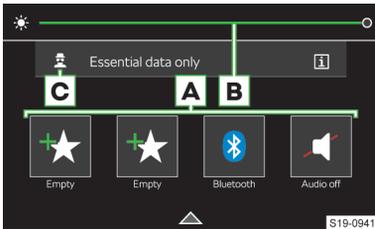
› Tap on .

Or:

› Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



- A** Preferred functions
- B** Setting the instrument and key illumination
- C** Setting the personal data protection level

Settings

- › To **display** editing mode hold any function surface of the preferred feature.
- › To **add** the preferred feature, move the desired feature from the top of the screen to the functional surface at the bottom of the screen.
- › To **close** edit mode, tap on .

Radio

Overview

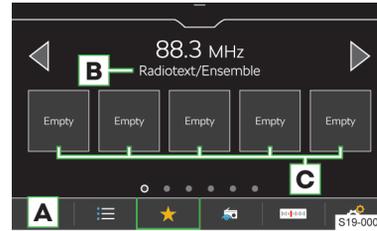
Display menu

› Tap **RADIO**.

Or:

› Tap **MENU** > .

Analogue and digital radio reception



- A** Select frequency range
- B** Depending on the frequency range
 - FM:** Radio text
 - DAB:** Radio text: name of the station group
- C** Station buttons for preferred stations
 - List of available stations
 - Show favourites
 - Show information about the station
 - Search stations manually (valid for AM and FM)
 - Settings

i Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.

List of available stations

› Tap on .

- Played station
- Station stored on the presets
- TP** A traffic radio station is set
- DAB signal is not available
- Filter the stations in the list according to the programme type, e.g. culture, music, sports, etc.
 - FM:** when the RDS function is switched on
- Manual update of the station list

In the station list, information about the program type and the type of the regional station can be displayed.

Operation

Select station



› Tap or at the top of the screen.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

- › To **start automatic play** press > Scan or the right rotary control .
- › To **end automatic play** press or the right rotary control .

Find stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

- › In the Radio main menu, tap .
- › To **search in sequence**, tap or next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

- › Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Or:

- › Turn the right rotary control.

Limitation

- ▶ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
- ▶ Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
- ▶ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.

Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.

- ▶ The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings**Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu**

- › Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

- › Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
- › Tap the desired preset button.

Deleting favourites

- › In the menu **Radio** > *clear memory* .
- › To delete **a** station button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.
- › To delete **all** station buttons for preferred stations Tap *All* and confirm the deletion.

Function surfaces

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface in the **Radio** menu is set as follows:

- › In the menu **Radio** > *Arrow buttons* .
- › Choose the change variant.

Traffic reception (TP) for FM stations on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

- › In the menu **Radio** > *Traffic program (TP)* .

Switch traffic reception for DAB stations on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

- › In the **Radio** menu switch on the menu item > *Traffic program (TP)* switch on
- › In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *DAB: Traffic program (TP)* switch on / off

Assigning a station logo

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option to assign logos from the pictures on an external source to the station buttons.

For station logos, images in jpg, gif, png, bmp format with a maximum resolution of 500x500 pixels can be used.

- › In the menu **Radio** > *Station logos* .
- › Tap the desired preset button.
- › Select the external source with the logo.
- › Find the desired logo and confirm.

Delete station logos

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

- › In the menu **Radio** > *Station logos* .
- › To delete **a** logo, tap the desired preset button and confirm the deletion.
- › To delete **all** logos Tap *All* and confirm the deletion.

Switch on/off autostore of logos for stations to be stored to Favourites

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

- › In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Automatic storage station logos* .

Regional FM station logo

Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

- › In the menu **Radio** > *Advanced settings* > *Region for station logo*: .
- › Choose country.

Automatic change of frequency to a regionally linked FM station

Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of automatically switching to a regionally linked FM station in case of signal loss of the FM station being listened to.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Advanced settings* › *RDS Regional* .
- › Select one of the following menu items:
 - ▶ *Fix* - When the signal is lost, another station must be set manually.
 - ▶ *Automatic* - automatic selection of the station with the best signal reception.

i If reception is lost in the given region, Infotainment will automatically set another available region.

Switch automatic frequency control (AF) on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the signal of the FM station currently being listened to is weak, Infotainment automatically sets the same station to a different frequency with a better signal.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Advanced settings* › *Automatic frequency change (AF)* .

Sort stations in the list of available stations

Applies to the FM frequency range.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Advanced settings* › *Station list* .
- › Select the sorting of stations in alphabetical order or by group.

Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and station presets are displayed, detailed information about the broadcast content of the station being listened to, or the name of the station group for the DAB station, is displayed.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Radio text* .

Switch RDS on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Advanced settings* › *Radio Radio Data System (RDS)* .

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available:

- ▶ Traffic program (TP)
- ▶ Radio text
- ▶ RDS Regional
- ▶ Automatic frequency change (AF)
- ▶ Regional station logo.
- ▶ Sort stations in the list of available stations

Switch program type display on / off

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

If the function is switched on, additional information on the broadcast program type (PTY) is displayed in the list of available stations. The programs can be filtered based on this information.

Switching additional announcements of the DAB transmitter on / off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Advanced settings* › *Tap other DAB announcements* .

Enable/disable automatic programme tracking of a DAB station

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same station with a better signal in a different DAB station group.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Advanced settings* › *DAB - DAB program tracking* .

Turn on/off automatic switching from a DAB station to the same FM station

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and the DAB station being listened to is lost, Infotainment automatically changes to the same FM station. The symbol (FM) is displayed after the station name.

When the corresponding DAB station can be received again, the station automatically changes from FM to DAB.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Advanced settings* › *Tap Automatic change DAB - FM* .

Switch the slideshow function on/off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, the images broadcast by the station are displayed in the player.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Advanced settings* › *DAB slideshow* .

Media

What you should be mindful of

- ▶ Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- ▶ When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.

- ▶ When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- ▶ The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

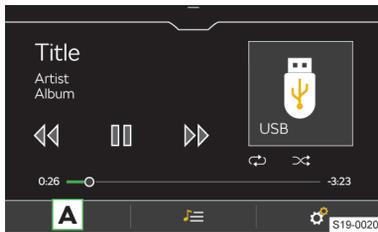
Overview

Display menu

- ▶ Tap **MEDIA**.

Or:

- ▶ Tap **MENU** > **♪**.



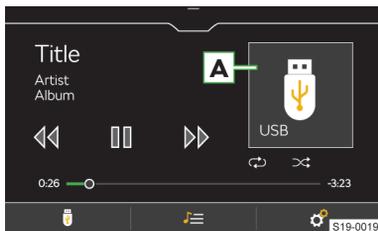
- A** Choose source

☰ Manage files / multimedia database

⚙ Settings

Operating the Player

Operation - Basics



- A** Album image / symbol of the connected source

- ▶ **Tap:** Start playback
- ⏸ **Tap:** Pause
- ⏮ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song
- ⏭ **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap:** to play the current title from the beginning
- ⏮ **Hold:** fast rewind within the track
- ▶▶ **Tap:** play the next track

- ▶▶ **Hold:** fast forward within the track

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Extended operation

- 🔄 Turn repeat playback of the current track on/off
- 🔄 Turn repeat playback of the current album/folder on/off
- 🔀 Turn random playback of the current album/folder on/off

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Settings

Turn title playback including subfolders on/off

- ▶ In the **Media** menu tap on **☰** > *Mix/Repeat including subfolders.*

Switch playback of online media from the Apple device on / off

- ▶ To **switching on / off** in the menu **media** **☰** > tap *Include online media from the iPod device.*

Media in the Apple iCloud will included in the list of available media under the following conditions:

- ✓ The mobile device is not connected using Apple CarPlay.
- ✓ The mobile device is connected to the Apple iCloud.

Traffic

- ▶ To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu **☰** > and tap on *Traffic program (TP).*

Safely disconnect the connected USB device

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the data on the connected USB device!

To safely disconnect a USB device, proceed as follows:

- ▶ In the **Media** menu tap on **☰** > *Safely remove USB.*
- ▶ Select the desired device.
- ▶ Disconnect the USB device.

ⓘ If it is not possible to safely disconnect the device, switch off the Infotainment and disconnect the device.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick	FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			HDD (without special software)	
		USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol		
		MTP	Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with an iOS operating system	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

ⓘ Apple iAP1 protocol is not supported by Infotainment.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

 <http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility>



All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
MPEG	MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3	32 - 320	32, 44, 48	Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 3			16, 22, 24	
	MPEG 2.5 Layer 3	mp3	8 - 160	8, 11, 12	Mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
WMA	Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1	wma	8 - 384	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	Windows Media Audio 9.2		8 - 320		
	Windows Media Audio 10		8 - 768	32, 44, 48, 96	

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
ADTS	AAC LC	aac	8 - 640	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, Stereo
	AAC HE		8 - 320	16, 22, 24,	
	AAC HEV2		16 - 64	32, 44, 48	
FLAC	FLAC	flac	-	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 64, 88, 96	Mono, stereo, 5.1, 7.1
RIFX	WAV	wav	64 - 3072	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
SBC	Bluetooth A2DP	-	8 - 345	44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo

[i] For files in MP4 format, only the soundtrack playback is carried out.

Files that are protected by **DRM-** and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported playlists

Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx
PLA	pls

Mobile device management

Overview

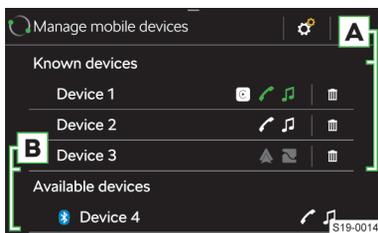
Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

View mobile device management

› **PHONE** › › Select mobile phone Tap ›

Or:

› **MENU** › › Tap Mobile devices .



A Connected / Previously connected devices

B Available devices

✔ The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth®“hands-free profile”

- ✔ The device is connected via the Bluetooth®“hands-free profile”
- ✔ The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile
- ✔ The device is connected via the Bluetooth® audio profile
- ✔ The device enables a SmartLinkconnection to be made via Android Auto
- ✔ The device enables a SmartLinkconnection to be made via Apple CarPlay
- ✔ The device enables a SmartLinkconnection to be made via MirrorLink
- ✔ Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by us-

ing the following reference or by reading the QR code:

<http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility>



All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices

Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

Information about ŠKODA applications

Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link:

<http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps>



Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment

- › Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
- › Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found under the menu item **MENU** › › Bluetooth › Name..

- › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device

- › **PHONE** › › Select mobile phone Tap › .
- › Select the desired device in the list of **available devices**.
- › Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
- › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
- › If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously connected mobile device

- › Tap on **PHONE** › › Select mobile phone.
- › Select the desired device from the list of **previously connected devices**.

The selected device is connected via the most recently used Bluetooth® profile.

- › If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types:

- ▲ Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

- › Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
- › Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

Overview

Display menu

- › Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

- › Tap **MENU** › .

I If the menu **phone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.



A Name of the connected phone

- ▶ **Tap:** View the list of previously connected phones

B Name of the telephone service provider

C Station buttons for preferred contacts

- 📞 Change the main telephone with the additional telephone
- ☎ Enter phone number
- 📞 Contact list
- 📞 Call lists
- 🗣 Switch on voice control of the connected phone
- ⚙ Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

- ✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.
The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > 📶 > Bluetooth > Bluetooth.
- ✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.
The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** > 📶 > Bluetooth > Visibility.
- ✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.
- ✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

- ▶ In the **Phone** menu, tap on ☎.
- ▶ Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.
[1] The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts. If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

- ▶ To **display** the contact list in the **phone** menu, tap on 📞.

- ▶ To **search** within the list, tap on Find.

- ▶ Enter the details you wish to find.

- ▶ To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

- ▶ To display the **details** for a contact, tap >.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

- ▶ In the **Phone** menu, tap on 📞 > ☎.

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

- 📞 End connection / reject incoming call / end call
- 📞 Answer an incoming call / return to the held call
- 📞 Switch the ringer off / on
- 📞 Hold a call
- 📞 Switch the microphone off / on
- 👤 Show details of the caller
- 📞 Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

- ▶ To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the telephone**, go to **telephone** in the menu and tap on 📞 > speakerphone .

- ▶ To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap 📞.

Conference call

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

- ▶ Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

- ▶ Accept a new incoming call by tapping 📞 .

- ▶ To **start** a conference call, tap 👤.

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context:

- 📞 Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference will continue in the background)
- 📞 Return to the held conference call
- 📞 Switch the microphone off / on
- 📞 End conference call
- 👤 Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected.

- ▶ Show details of the conference call participants
- ▶ End conversation with the conference call participant
- ▶ Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Settings for Infotainment telephone functions

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment:

- ▶ **No telephone** - The telephone is connected as a main telephone.
- ▶ **One telephone** - The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.
- ▶ **Two telephones** - Select the telephone to be replaced.
- ▶ To **switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on **☰** in the **Phone** menu.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

- ▶ Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
- ▶ Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The name of the unit can be found under the menu item **MENU** › **☰** › **Bluetooth** › **Name..**

- ▶ Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired telephone - no telephone is connected

- ▶ Tap on **PHONE**.

Or:

- ▶ Tap on **MENU** › **↶**.
- ▶ Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Connecting Infotainment to a non-paired telephone - another telephone is connected

- ▶ Tap on **PHONE** › **☰** › **Select mobile phone** › **☑**.
- ▶ Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
- ▶ Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
- ▶ Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

- ▶ If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone

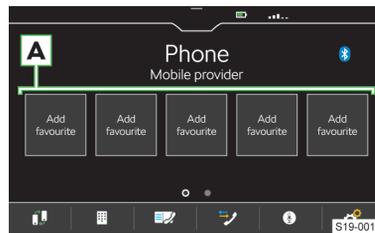
- ▶ **PHONE** › **☰** › **Select mobile phone** .
- ▶ Select the desired device from the list of **previously connected devices**.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

- ▶ If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts



- ▶ To **save** the desired preset button, hold **A**.
- ▶ Select a contact from the displayed list.
- ▶ If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.
- ▶ To **display the menu for deletion**, go to the **phone** menu **☰** › and tap on **Manage favourites** .
- ▶ To delete **one** preset, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

- ▶ To delete **all** station buttons, tap **Tap All** and confirm the deletion.

Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 2000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

- ▶ For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** **☰** › menu **User profile** › tap on **Import contacts** .

Sort contacts in the phone book

- ▶ In the **Telephone** **☰** › menu **User profile** › **Sort by:** Tap and select the sorting type.

Ringtone

Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

- ▶ To set the Infotainment ringtone in the **phone** menu, tap  > *User profile* > *select the ringtone* .
- ▶ Select the ringtone.

Voice mailbox number

- ▶ To set the voice mailbox number in the **phone**  > menu, tap *User profile* > *Mailbox number* .
- ▶ Enter the voice mailbox number.

Simultaneous calls

This applies to some countries.

Depending on the connected telephone, it is possible to answer the next incoming call and hold the previous call.

- ▶ To switch on simultaneous calls, tap on **telephone**  > *Parallel talks*.

Wi-Fi

Functionality

Wi-Fi can be used for the SmartLink connection.

The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 3 mobile devices.

- ▶ To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** >  > *Wi-Fi* > *Connected devices* .

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

- ▶ Turn on the Infotainment Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item **MENU** >  > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi hotspot*.
- ▶ Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.
- ▶ In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item **MENU** >  > *Wi-Fi* > *Network name*.

- ▶ Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item **MENU** >  > *Wi-Fi* > *Network key*.

- ▶ Confirm the connection.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at WPA2 and cannot be changed.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 8 and a maximum of 63 characters.

- ▶ Tap **MENU** >  > *Wi-Fi* > *Network key*.
- ▶ Enter the password and confirm.

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

- ① Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types:

- ▶ Android Auto
- ▶ Apple CarPlay
- ▶ MirrorLink

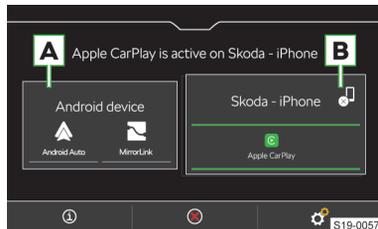
Overview of the SmartLink connection

Menu SmartLink

- ▶ Tap **APP**/.

Or:

- ▶ Tap **MENU** > .



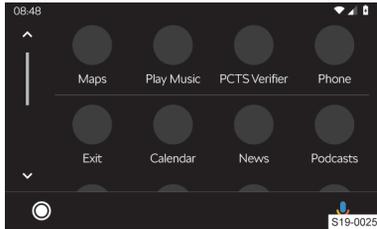
A Previously connected device

B Currently connection device

- ① Display information about SmartLink

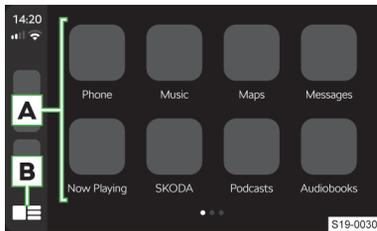
- ⊗ Disconnection of the active connection
- 📶 Disconnection of the active connection
- ⚙️ Settings in SmartLink menu

Android Auto



- 🕒 Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
- 🗣️ Turn on voice control (Google Voice)

Apple CarPlay



- A** List of available applications
- B** Depending on the duration of operation:
 - ▶ **Tap:** Return to the menu Apple CarPlay
 - ▶ **Hold:** Turn on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink



- ⊖ It is not possible to operate the application while driving
- 🏠 Return to the menu SmartLink
- 📱 List of running applications
- 📺 Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices
- ⚙️ Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

- ✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.
- ✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the respective market.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be “unlocked”.

Conditions for Android Auto

- ✓ The device to be connected must have Android Auto connection.
 - A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connection can be found on the Google, Inc. website.
- ✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.
- ✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

- ✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlay connection.
 - A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Apple CarPlay connection can be found on the Apple Inc website.
- ✓ Siri voice control is on.
- ✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

- ✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLink connection.
 - A list of devices and applications that support the MirrorLink connection can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consortium®.
- ✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

- 📱 Display of control surfaces at the bottom
- 📱 Display of control surfaces at the top
- 🗣️ Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

 Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB

- › Turn on the Infotainment.
- › Turn on the mobile device.
- › Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
- › Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

- › Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the mobile device.
- › Tap on **MENU** >  >  > *mobile devices*.
- › In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol .
- › Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
- › If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay - Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.
- › In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.
- › Press and hold the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® unit of the Infotainment.

- › Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
- › Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
- › If necessary, confirm the PIN.

- › In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay - Disconnect

- › In the Apple CarPlay menu, tap on the function area "ŠKODA".
- › Tap on .

Android Auto - Connection via USB

- › Turn on the Infotainment.
- › Turn on the mobile device.
- › Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
- › Choose to connect via Android Auto.

Android Auto - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

- › Tap on **MENU** >  > *mobile devices*.
- › Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
- › Select the Bluetooth® hands-free profile.
- › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
- › If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
- › From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the  symbol.

Android Auto - Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum Android version is 5.
- ✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.

- › Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
- › Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
- › If necessary, confirm the PIN.
- › In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Android Auto.

Android Auto - Disconnect

- › In the Android Auto  menu, tap "Return to SKODA".
- › Tap on .

MirrorLink - Connection via USB

- › Turn on the Infotainment.
- › Turn on the mobile device.
- › Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
- › Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

MirrorLink - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

- › Turn on Wi-Fi and visibility in the mobile device.

- > Turn on the Infotainment Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item **MENU** >  > *Wi-Fi* > *Wi-Fi hotspot*.
- > In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.
- > Enter the required password.
- > With some mobile devices, communication between the device and the Infotainment in the notification bar of the mobile device must be confirmed.
- > Tap on **MENU** >  > *mobile devices*.
- > From the list of **available devices**, select the desired device with the  symbol.

MirrorLink - Disconnect

- > In the MirrorLink menu, tap on .
- > Tap on .

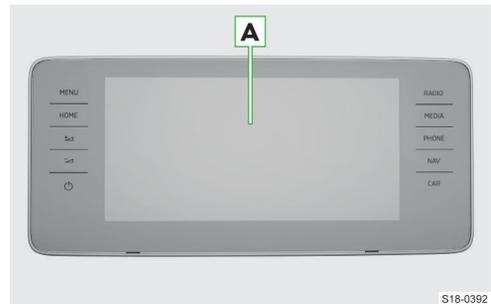
Change to another device / connection type

Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

- > Tap on **MENU** > .
- > Select the desired device or connection type.

Infotainment Amundsen

Infotainment overview



A Touchscreen

MENU All menus

HOME Favourite menus

 Increase volume

 Reduce volume

 Depending on the status:

▶ **Infotainment switched off**

▶ **Tap:** Turn on Infotainment

▶ **Infotainment switched on**

▶ **Tap:** Switch sound off/on

▶ **Hold:** Switch off Infotainment

RADIO Radio menu

MEDIA Media menu

PHONE Phone menu

NAV Navigation menu

CAR Information about vehicle settings

System

Limitation

For safety reasons, operation of some Infotainment functions while driving is not possible or is restricted.

The Infotainment system indicates this by means of a message in the screen.

Basic settings

Setting basic functions

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** >  menu:

- ▶ Time and date
- ▶ Language
- ▶ Units

- ▶ Restore factory settings

Sound settings

The Infotainment sound is set in the menu **MENU** › ◀.

The following menu items can be set:

- ▶ Setting the equalizer
- ▶ Adjusting the volume ratio
- ▶ Volume adjustment of individual Infotainment functions

The volume can be adjusted on e.g. one of the following menu items:

- ▶ Volume adjustment of voice commands
- ▶ Setting the maximum volume when Infotainment is turned on
- ▶ Speed-dependent volume setting
- ▶ Setting the Infotainment to mute with the parking aid switched on

Depending on the equipment, the following advanced sound settings can be set

- ▶ Setting space optimisation
- ▶ Setting the audio profiles according to genre
- ▶ Adjusting the subwoofer volume

Configuration wizard

The configuration wizard helps to set certain Infotainment functions.

The configuration assistant is automatically displayed if the ignition is switched on and if there are at least two menu items that have not been set up after switching on the Infotainment.

- ▶ To **switch off the automatic display**, when the configuration assistant is displayed tap *Don't show again*.
- ▶ For **manual display** tap **MENU** › ⚙️ › *Configuration wizard*.

Set up menu HOME

- ▶ To **display another page** of the HOME menu, press the screen with two fingers and drag it to the left or right.

To **add the preferred menu**, proceed as follows:

- ▶ Tap on an empty functional surface.

Or:

- ▶ Press and hold an occupied functional surface and then tap on an empty functional area.
- ▶ Select a menu with the desired dimension of the functional surface.
- ▶ Tap on ✕ to exit edit mode.

To **remove the preferred menu**, proceed as follows:

- ▶ Press an occupied functional surface.
- ▶ Tap on **m**.
- ▶ Tap on ✕ to exit edit mode.

Set up menu MENU

The position of the functional surfaces in the MENU menu can be customized as follows:

- ▶ Press and hold the desired functional surface until it is free.
- ▶ Move the functional surface to a different position.

Troubleshooting

Infotainment not responding

If the infotainment does not respond, restart it as follows:

- ▶ Hold ⏻ for longer than 10 s.
- ▶ Wait for the restart to complete.

System update

We recommend having the system update carried out by a specialist company.

The system update ensures optimal function of the Infotainment system, e.g. compatibility with new phones.

Determine system version

- ▶ Tap **MENU** › ⚙️ › *System information*.

Screen

Overview



- A** Status bar
- B** Bar with the functional surfaces of the displayed menu
- C** Display of the control centre
- D** Other pages of the menu

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

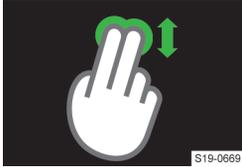
Danger of screen damage!

- ▶ The Infotainment screen is operated **by touching it lightly with your finger**.

In principle, operation by touch is identical to the operation of a mobile phone.

The following operating modes are specific to the Infotainment system.

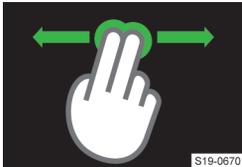
Dragging up or down with two fingers



S19-0669

- ▶ Quickly review the list of phone contacts
- ▶ Switch 2D/3D map display

Dragging left or right with two fingers



S19-0670

- ▶ Display next page of the HOME menu

Pulling apart with two fingers



S19-0667

- ▶ Enlarge image
- ▶ Zoom into the map

Pulling together with two fingers



S19-0668

- ▶ Minimize image
- ▶ Zoom out of the map

Turn two fingers

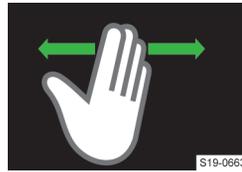


S19-0666

- ▶ Rotate image
- ▶ Rotate the map

Contactless gesture control

The Infotainment menus marked with the  symbol can be controlled by hand gestures.



S19-0663

▶ Gesture control is achieved by slowly moving the hand back and forth approximately 8 cm above the lower edge of the screen.

Depending on the setting, a recognized gesture can be confirmed acoustically and animated.

Displaying operation help

- ▶ Tap on MENU >  > .

Settings

The following basic screen functions are set in the menu MENU >  > Screen:

- ▶ Brightness level of the screen
- ▶ Switch off the screen
- ▶ Display the time
- ▶ Confirmation sounds and animations

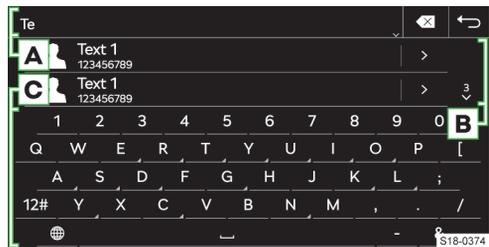
Infotainment keyboard

Keypad overview

The arrangement of the keyboard characters depends on the set infotainment language.

Depending on the context, the following types are used in infotainment:

- ▶ Alphanumeric
- ▶ Numeric
- ▶ Keyboard for input
- ▶ Keyboard for search



S18-0374

Keypad example

A Input line

- ▶  Delete characters before the cursor
 - ▶ **Tap:** delete the last character
 - ▶ **Hold:** delete all characters one after the other
- ▶  Display functional surfaces for moving the cursor in the input line
 - ▶  Move cursor to the left

▶ > Move cursor to the right

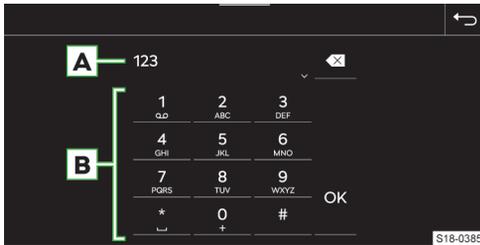
B Entries found

▶ ∨ Show list

C Keypad functional surfaces

- ▶ ⬆ Change to lowercase
- ▶ ⬆ Switch to first having an upper-case letter, followed by lower-case letters
- ▶ ⬆ Switch to uppercase
- ▶ ABC/ABB Switch to the language keypad
- ▶ 12# Switch to the numeric and character keypad
- ▶ 1/2/2/2 Switch to other character variants
- ▶ 🌐 Show additional keyboard languages
- ▶ ↵ Insert spaces
- ▶ ↵ The next line
- ▶ ⚙ **Hold:** Show more character variants
- ▶ 👁 Show password
- ▶ OK Confirm the entered characters

Numeric keypad



Keypad example

A Input line

- ▶ ✖ Delete characters before the cursor
- ▶ **Tap:** delete the last character
- ▶ **Hold:** delete all characters

B Keypad functional surfaces

- ▶ OK Confirm the entered characters
- I** If it is possible depending on the context, alphanumeric characters can be entered by holding a function area with the number.

Operation

The Infotainment keypad is used to enter characters, letters and numbers.

The keypad will be **automatically displayed** when Infotainment prompts for characters.

Find

When entering characters, corresponding entries are searched for.

The entry to be searched for can be entered including diacritics.

The keyboard will only provide characters that match the stored entries.

▶ To **display searched entries** tap ∨.

Show additional keypad languages

To use the additional keypad languages, the desired languages must be set first.

▶ Tap 🌐 or repeatedly tap the flag symbol until the desired language keypad is displayed.

Further character variants

- ▶ Press and hold the sign with the symbol ⚙.
- ▶ Select the desired symbol.

Setting up additional keyboard languages

▶ Tap **MENU** > 🌐 > *Additional keypad languages.*

Voice control

Functionality

Voice control principle

Voice control works according to the principle of dialogue between the user and the Infotainment system.

The user says a voice command. The Infotainment system responds or executes the voice command.

Advanced voice control

The vehicle's advanced voice control enables the vehicle functions to be searched and operated online.

Advanced voice control understands fluent whole sentences. You do not need to use set commands or phrases.

The advanced voice control can, for example, search for special destinations or dictate SMS messages if the connected telephone makes this possible.

This function allows you to combine the search in the online and offline data of the Infotainment. The transition between online and offline search is seamless and imperceptible to the user.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ Infotainment switched on

Operating conditions for advanced voice control

To use the advanced voice control, the following conditions must also be met:

- ✓ The vehicle supports the function.

- ✓ The vehicle has Infotainment and functions that can be controlled by the advanced voice control.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile network, through which the connection to ŠKODA Connect Services is ensured.
- ✓ The level of protection of personal data is set to *Share my position*.

Requirement for recognition of the activation command

- ✓ Activated menu item **MENU** › *☰* › *Voice control* › *Active*

Operation

Switch on voice control

- › Press the *☰* button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

- › Say the activation command “OK Laura”.

After switching on, the icon *🗣️* is displayed in the status bar.

Enter voice command

- › Speak a voice command with voice control switched on.

During recognition of the voice command, the *🗣️* icon is displayed.

The Infotainment system then executes the voice command or plays the message. During the message, the *🗣️* icon is displayed.

After the execution of the voice command, voice control is switched off.

Correcting a voice command

- › During voice command input, press the *☰* button on the multifunction steering wheel and say a new voice command.

Stopping voice control

Stopping leaves more time for voice command input, e.g. for searching for a phone contact.

- › Move your finger up or down over the Infotainment screen.

Or:

- › Say the voice command “pause”.

Resuming stopped voice control

- › Press the *☰* button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Or:

- › Tap on *🗣️* in the Infotainment screen.

Stopping the played back message

- › Press the *☰* button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Ending voice control

- › Press the *☰* button on the multifunction steering wheel twice.

Or:

- › Say the voice command “cancel” during voice command input.

Restriction

For some Infotainment languages, there is no voice control available. The Infotainment system will indicate this.

The messages are generated by Infotainment. Flawless clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

You cannot use voice control while a phone call is in progress.

Settings

The following voice control functions are set in the menu **MENU** › *☰* › *Voice control*:

- ▶ Confirmation tones
- ▶ Enable/disable use of the activation word.

Self help

Starting acoustic help

- › If the Infotainment system is expecting a voice command, say “Help”.

The “Help” voice command can be issued repeatedly for further tips on voice control.

Displaying the help

- › Tap on **MENU** › *☰* › *🗣️*.

Or:

- › If Infotainment is expecting a voice command, say “Overview”.

Switch example voice commands display on / off

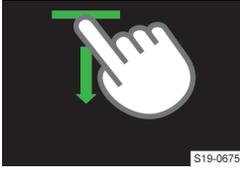
The system offers the option of displaying example voice commands after switching on the voice control in the Infotainment screen.

- › To turn **MENU** › *☰* › *voice control on/off*, tap › *Show in Infotainment system*.

Control Centre

Overview

Display of the control centre



- > Press the bar at the top of the screen and drag down.

Closing the control centre

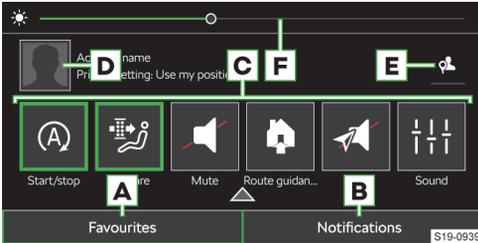
- > Tap on ▲.

Or:

- > Wait 5 seconds.

Control Centre

The Infotainment control centre can be used for quick access to the following functions:



- A** Display and administration of functional surfaces of preferred features
- B** Display list of informational messages
- C** Preferred functions
- D** Display user account management
- E** Setting the personal data protection level
- F** Setting the instrument and key illumination

Set functional areas of preferred features

- > To **display** editing mode hold any function surface of the preferred feature.
- > To **add** the preferred feature, move the desired feature from the top of the screen to the functional surface at the bottom of the screen.
- > To **close** edit mode, tap on ×.

Radio

Overview

Display menu

- > Tap **RADIO**.

Or:

- > Tap **MENU** >

Analogue and digital radio player

- > **A** Tap and select the desired frequency range.
- > Tap and search for or select the desired station.
- > Tap on .



- A** Select source
- B** Station name
- C** Information about the broadcast content
- D** Station logos
- List of available stations
- ★ Show favourites
- Information about the station
- Search stations manually (valid for AM and FM)
- Settings

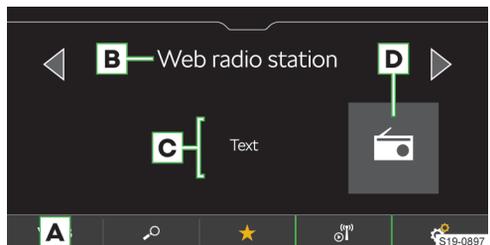
List of available analogue and digital radio stations

- > Tap on .
- Played station
- ★ Station stored on the presets
- TP A traffic radio station is set
- The DAB transmitter emits images which are displayed in the information to the station
- Manual update of the station list

In the station list, information about the programme type and the channel identification of the regional channel can be displayed.

Web radio player

- > **A** tap and select a web radio station.
- > Tap and search or select web radio.
- > Tap on .



- A** Select source
- B** Station name
- C** Information about the broadcast content
- D** Station logos
- 🔍 List of web radio and podcasts
- ★ Show favourites
- 📄 Information about the programme as well as the broadcast content of the web radio
- ⚙️ Settings

Podcast player

- > Tap **A** and select an online radio station.
- > Tap 🔍 and search for or select the desired podcast.
- > Tap 📄.



- A** Select source
- B** Podcast name
- C** Information about the broadcast content
- D** Podcast logo with the 📄 symbol

- ▷ **Tap:** Start playback
- ⏸ **Tap:** Pause
- ◀◀ **Tap:** Go back 15 secs
- ▶▶ **Tap:** Go forward 15 secs
- 📄 View episodes of the podcast being played
- 🔍 List of web radio stations and podcasts
- ★ Show favourites
- 📄 Show information about the podcast
- ⚙️ Settings

List of web radio stations and podcasts

- > Tap on 🔍.

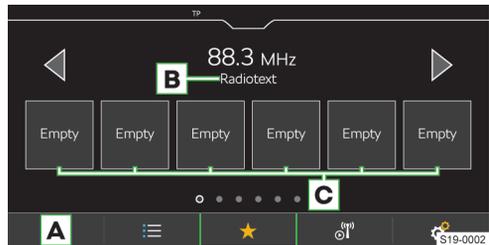


- 🔍 Search for web radio stations and podcasts
- 📄 Recently played web radio stations and podcasts
- 📄 100 most popular web radio stations depending on the Infotainment language that has been set
- 📍 Go to podcasts and select
- 📄 Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected country
- 🌐 Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected language
- ✔ Search for and select web radio stations and podcasts based on the selected genre
- 📄 See list of related podcasts based on content listened to
- 📄 See list of related podcasts based on content listened to

I The podcasts are shown in the displayed lists with the icon 📄.

List of favourite stations and podcasts

- > In the menu Radio, tap on ★.



- A** Select source
- B** Radio text
- C** Station buttons for favourite stations and podcasts

Operation

Select station



- > Tap ◀ or ▶ at the top of the screen.

SCAN function

The function plays receivable stations of the selected frequency range in succession for a few seconds each.

- › To **start automatic play** , tap **Scan**.
- › To **stop automatic play**, tap **SCAN**.

Find stations manually

Manual search is available for AM and FM stations.

- › To display the  functional surface for the FM station, turn on menu item  › **Advanced settings** › **Station display**: › **FM switch on**
- › In the Radio main menu, tap .
- › To **search in sequence**, tap  or  next to the displayed frequency range scale.

Or:

- › Hold down the scroll mark on the frequency range scale and move it to the desired value.

Limitation

- ▶ Infotainment supports digital radio reception in DAB and DAB+ formats.
- ▶ Car parks, tunnels, tall buildings or mountains can restrict radio reception.
- ▶ In the rear side windows, there are antennas for receiving the radio signal.
Covering the panes with foils or metal-coated labels may affect the reception of the radio signal.
- ▶ The ŠKODA AUTO company assumes no responsibility for the availability, correct functioning and broadcast information of the RDS service.

Settings**Save the station currently being listened to as a favourite from the Radio main menu**

- › Hold the desired station key for preferred stations until the station is stored.

Save station to favourites from the list of available stations

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

- › Hold the line with the name of the desired station.
- › Tap the desired preset button.

Save channels from the list of web radio stations and podcasts

Valid for web radio stations and podcasts

- › Select a web radio station as the playback source.
- › Tap on .
- › Go to the desired web radio station or podcast and select it.

- › Hold the line with the name of the desired station or podcast.
- › Tap the desired preset button.

 With podcasts, it is not possible to save the individual episodes.

Deleting favourites

- › In the menu **Radio**  › **Delete memory entries** .
- › To delete a station button for preferred stations, tap the desired station button and confirm the deletion.
- › To delete all station buttons for preferred stations **Clear all** and confirm the deletion.

Functional surfaces   for analogue and digital radios

Applies to AM, FM and DAB frequency ranges.

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface   in the **Radio** menu is set as follows:

- › In the menu **Radio**  › **Arrow buttons** .
- › Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station buttons or the stations stored in the list of available stations.

Functional areas   for web radio stations and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

The variant for **changing stations** using the function surface   in the **Radio** menu is set as follows:

- › In the menu **Radio**  › **Arrow buttons** .
- › Select the variant for switching between the stations stored on the station keys or the last web stations and podcasts listened to.

Switch traffic reception (TP) for stations on/off

Applies to FM and DAB frequency range.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › **Traffic program (TP)** .

Assign station logo from the Infotainment memory
Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Infotainment offers the option of assigning logos, which are stored in the Infotainment memory, to the stations.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › **Station logos** .
- › Select the desired station and logo.

Switching off the station logo display

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › **Station logos** .
- › To select the desired station. *No station logo* .

Activating / deactivating automatic station logo assignment

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on, a station logo from the Infotainment memory is assigned when the station is stored on a preset.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Advanced settings* › *Tap Automatic selection of station logos* .

Turn on/off radio text reception

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

When the function is switched on and the station buttons are displayed, you can see more information about the content broadcast from the station to which you are listening.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Radio text* .

Regional FM station logo

Applies to the FM frequency range.

Infotainment provides the option of using country-specific FM station logos.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Advanced settings* › *Region for station logo* .
- › Choose country.

Switching additional announcements of the DAB transmitter on / off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on, other announcements are received as traffic announcements. These include e.g. weather news, sports reports, financial news etc.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Advanced settings* › *Tap Additional DAB announcements* .

Switch RDS on/off

Applies to the FM frequency range.

The menu item is only available for some countries.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Advanced settings* › *Radio Radio Data System (RDS)* .

If the **RDS function is disabled**, the following menu items in **FM station** settings are not available:

- ▶ Traffic program (TP)
- ▶ Radio text
- ▶ RDS Regional
- ▶ Automatic frequency change (AF)
- ▶ Regional station logo.

Switch automatic switching to a similar DAB transmitter on / off

Applies to the DAB frequency range.

When the function is switched on and there is signal loss from the DAB station being listened to, Infotainment automatically sets another DAB station with similar content.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Advanced settings* › *Tap Switch to a similar station if weak reception* .

Displaying FM / DAB stations or FM stations in the list of available stations

Applies to the FM and DAB frequency ranges.

Depending on the following setting, the stations of the selected frequency range are displayed in the list of available stations.

- › In the menu **Radio**  › *Advanced settings* › *Station display* .

- › Select one of the following menu items:

- ▶ *FM/DAB* - the list shows available FM and DAB stations.
- ▶ *FM* - the list shows available FM stations.

Sound quality of web radio stations and podcasts

Applies to web radio stations and podcasts.

- › To adjust the sound quality, in the **Radio** menu tap on  › *Audio quality* .
- › Choose low or high quality.

The quality you set affects the amount of data used in the data connection.

Quality also depends on the speed and availability of the data connection.

-  If playback failure occur, reduce the sound quality.

Media

What you should be mindful of

- ▶ Do not save any important data or that which has not been backed up on the connected audio sources. ŠKODA assumes no responsibility for lost or damaged files or connected audio sources.
- ▶ When changing or connecting an audio source, this may cause sudden changes in volume. Reduce the volume before changing or connecting an audio source.
- ▶ When connecting an audio source, the source information messages can be displayed. These messages must be observed and, if necessary, confirmed.
- ▶ The national copyright laws that apply in your country must be observed.

Overview

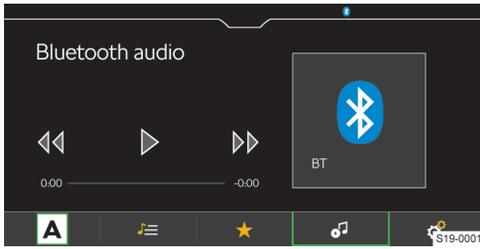
Display menu

- › Tap **MEDIA**.

Or:

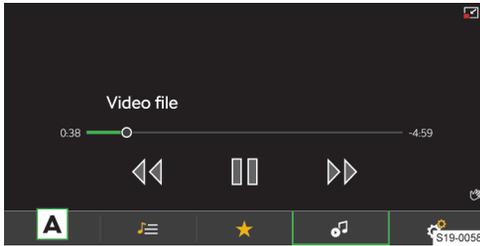
- › Tap **MENU** › .

Music player



- A** Choose source
- ☰ Manage files / multimedia database
- ★ Show favourites
- 🎵 Details about the track being played
- ⚙️ Settings

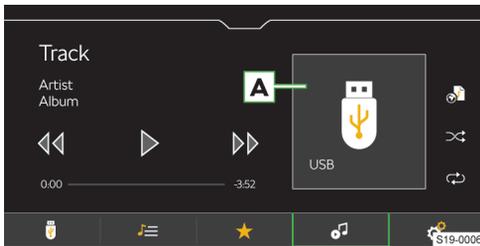
Video player



- A** Select source
- ☰ Manage files / multimedia database
- ★ Show favourites
- 🎵 Show video
- ☑️ Shrink image display
- ☑️ Enlarge the image display
- ⚙️ Settings

Player controls

Operation - Basics



- A** Album image / symbol of the connected source
 - ▶ **Tap:** list available albums

- ▶ **Tap:** Start playback
- ⏸ **Tap:** Pause
- ⏮ **Within 3 seconds of starting playback, tap:** play the previous song
- ⏮ **After 3 seconds from the start of playback, tap:** to play the current title from the beginning
- ⏮ **Hold:** fast rewind within the track
- ▶ **Tap:** play the next track
- ▶ **Hold:** fast forward within the track

Movement within the title is also possible by dragging the finger over the timeline.

Advanced operation

- 🔁 Turn on / off repeat playback of the current track
- 🔄 Turn on / off repeat playback of the current album / folder
- 🎲 Turn on / off random playback of the current album / folder
- 📁 Save the played track in the "My playlist" playlist

"My playlist" management

- ▶ To **display the playlist**, tap ☰ > 📁 > 🎵 > 📁.
- ▶ To **manage the playlist** tap / in the displayed playlist.

The following activities can be carried out in playlist management:

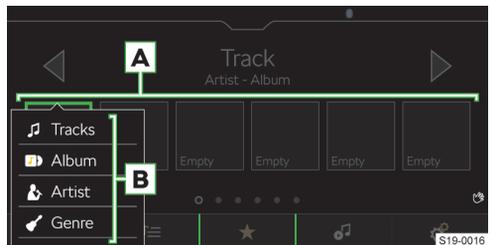
- ▶ Control playback.
- ▶ Change the order of a title in the list by holding and moving ☰ to the desired position.
- ▶ Delete title.

Restriction

The availability of some media operation functions is dependent on the connected source and the software being used, e.g. Bluetooth®.

Settings

Manage favourites



- ▶ To **save**, hold the desired functional area for favourites **A**.

- › Choose one of the available list entries **B**.
- › To **Clear**, in the menu **media**  › tap on *Manage favourites*.
- › To delete a **favourite**, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

- › To delete **all favourites** tap on *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Traffic

- › To **turn on/off** traffic monitoring during playback of media files, go to the **Media** in the main menu  › and tap on *Traffic program (TP)*.

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Type	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	MSC	USB stick HDD (without special software)	VFAT FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS
			USB devices that use the USB mass storage support protocol	
		MTP	Devices running the Android or Windows Phone operating system that support the Media Transfer Protocol	
		Apple	Devices with the iOS operating system and the iAP2 protocol	HFS+
Bluetooth® player	Bluetooth®	-	Bluetooth® protocols A2DP and AVRCP (1.0 - 1.6)	-

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

 <http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility>



All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Supported audio files

Compression format	Codec type	File extension	Max. bit rate [kbps]	Max. sampling rate [kHz]	Multi channels
MPEG	MPEG 1 Layer 2	mp2	32 - 384	32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 2		8 - 160	16, 22, 24	
	MPEG 1 Layer 3	mp3	32 - 320	32, 44, 48	Mono, dual mono, Stereo, Joint Stereo
	MPEG 2 Layer 3		8 - 160	16, 22, 24	
MPEG 2.5 Layer 3		8, 11, 12			
WMA	Windows Media Audio 7	wma	6 - 192	8, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
	Windows Media Audio 8		8 - 384	8, 11, 16, 22, 32, 44, 48, 96	
	Windows Media Audio 9 and 9.1		8 - 768		
	Windows Media Audio 9.2		8 - 320		
	Windows Media Audio 10		32 - 768	32, 44, 48, 96	
ADTS	AAC LC	aac	16 - 2048	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Stereo
	AAC HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	AAC HEv2				
MP4	M4A LC	m4a	16 - 400	22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Stereo
	M4A HE			16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	
	M4A HEv2			16 - 64	
OGG	OGG-Vorbis	ogg	8 - 576	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
FLAC	FLAC	flac	-	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 64, 88, 96, 192	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
RIFF	WAV	wav	64 - 3072	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48, 96	Mono, Stereo
Monkey's	Monkey's	ape	8 - 192		
SBC	Bluetooth A2DP	-	8 - 345	8, 11, 12, 16, 22, 24, 32, 44, 48	Mono, stereo, Joint stereo
OPUS	OPUS	opus	6 - 2000	8 - 48	Mono, stereo, Multichannel

Files that are protected by **DRM-** and **iTunes®** methods are not supported by Infotainment.

Supported video files

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]
MPEG 1	mpg mpeg m1v mPV	1.5
MPEG 2	mpg mpeg ps m2v	15

Codec type	File extension	Max. recordings per second bit rate [Mbit/s]
MPEG 4 (H.264)	m4p mp4 m4v mp4v mov	50
MPJEG		
MPEG 4 (ISO)		
Xvid	Xvid	20
WMV9	wmv asf	50

Supported playlists

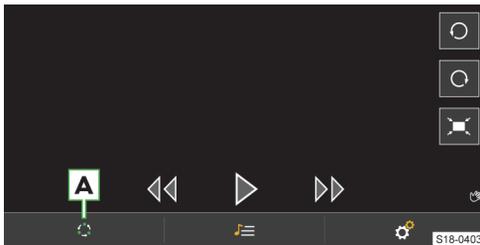
Codec type	File extension
M3U	m3u
M3U8	m3u8
PLS	pls
WPL	wpl
ASX	asx

Images

Overview

Display menu
 > Tap MENU >

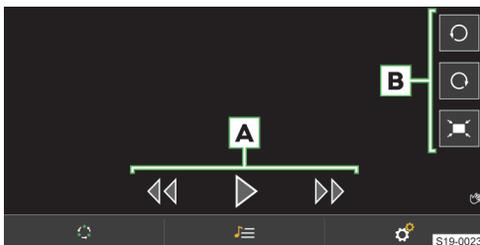
Image viewer



- A** Select source
- Manage files
- Settings

Operation

Operation using functional areas



- A** View images
 - ▶ Show the next image
 - ▶ Show the previous image
 - ▶ Start slideshow
 - ▶ Stop slideshow
- B** View image
 - ▶ Turn left
 - ▶ Turn right
 - ▶ Show in output size

Gesture control



▶ Display of the next image



▶ Display the previous image



▶ Increase the image size



▶ Reduce the image size



▶ Rotate by 90 °

Settings

The following Infotainment functions are set in the **MENU** > > menu:

- ▶ Display image size
- ▶ Display image duration during the slideshow
- ▶ Slideshow repeat

Supported sources and files

Supported sources

Source	Interface	Specification	File system
USB	USB 1.x; 2.x 3.x or higher with USB 2.x support	USB stick	VFAT
		HDD (without special software)	FAT16 FAT32 exFAT NTFS

Supported files

Codec type	File extension	Max. resolution [Mpx]
BMP	bmp	4
JPG; JPEG	jpg; jpeg	4 (Progressive Mode) 64
GIF	gif	4
PNG	png	4

The maximum supported image size is 20 MB.

Mobile device management

Cybernetic security

Your vehicle contains components that are used to exchange information and data between the vehicle and the connected mobile devices or the Internet.

These components have security mechanisms that minimise the risk of unauthorised access to the vehicle systems.

Regular software updates help reduce the risk of unauthorised access to vehicle systems and vehicle functions. The following guidelines must therefore be observed:

- ▶ Use only media carriers, Bluetooth® devices, and mobile devices that contain no harmful data or malware.
- ▶ Regularly update the software provided by ŠKODA AUTO.

We recommend having the system software and components updated by a specialist company.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

Malware in the vehicle can influence and deactivate certain vehicle functions, or take over the controls of these where applicable.

- ▶ If the vehicle reacts in an unusual way, immediately reduce speed or stop the vehicle.
- ▶ Seek the help of a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

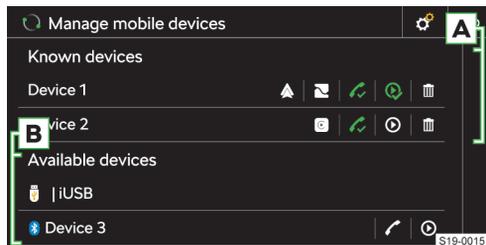
Malware in the vehicle may gain unauthorised access to the information and data of the vehicle, and on occasion, to connected mobile devices.

Overview

Using mobile device management, devices can be connected, disconnected, and interchanged.

Display mobile device management

- ▶ Tap on **MENU** > > *Manage mobile devices.*



- ✔ The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth®“hands-free profile”
- ✔ The device is connected via the Bluetooth®“hands-free profile”
- ⊙ The device enables a connection via the Bluetooth® audio profile
- ⊙ The device is connected via the Bluetooth® audio profile
- ✖ Remove the device from the list **previously connected devices**

- ▲ The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Android Auto
- The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via Apple CarPlay
- The device enables a SmartLink connection to be made via MirrorLink

- A Connected / Previously connected devices
- B Available devices

Limitations of mobile devices and applications

Availability of features

The availability of certain features depends on the type of mobile device, as well as that of the applications installed.

Compatibility of mobile devices

It is possible to check the ŠKODAweb pages to see if Infotainment is compatible with the selected mobile device being tested. This check is carried out by using the following reference or by reading the QR code:

<http://go.skoda.eu/compatibility>



All information given is incidental and serves as information.

The ŠKODA AUTO company cannot guarantee full functionality and compatibility, e.g. due to a software update of the Infotainment and the mobile devices.

Bluetooth® compatibility of mobile devices

Due to the large number of mobile devices, it is not possible to guarantee total Bluetooth® compatibility with Infotainment. Bluetooth® compatibility depends on the Bluetooth® version as well as the implementation of Bluetooth® protocols by the manufacturer of the mobile device.

Applications in mobile devices

Mobile devices can be used to install applications that allow you to view additional information on the Infotainment screen, or to operate the Infotainment system.

Due to the variety of applications, as well as their ongoing development, the available applications may not function on all mobile devices. ŠKODA AUTO assumes no liability for their proper functioning.

The scope of available applications and their functionality is dependent on the type of Infotainment, as well as the vehicle and country.

Information about ŠKODA Applications

Detailed information about ŠKODA applications can be found on the website after reading the following QR code or link:

<http://go.skoda.eu/mobile-apps>



Connection set-up

Connect a mobile device to Infotainment

- › Find available Bluetooth® devices in the mobile device.
- › Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
The unit name can be determined by tapping MENU > Manage mobile devices > device name..
- › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired mobile device

- › MENU > Manage mobile devices .
- › Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
- › Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
- › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
- › If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously connected mobile device

- › MENU > Manage mobile devices .

Or:

- › PHONE > Select mobile phone .
- › Select the desired device from the list of **previously connected devices**.
- › Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
- › If two devices are connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

SmartLink connection

Infotainment provides the ability to connect SmartLink to compatible mobile devices using the following connection types:

- ▲ Android Auto
- Apple CarPlay
- MirrorLink

Mobile devices can be connected to the Infotainment via USB cable or Wi-Fi, as long as the mobile device supports it.

- › Connect the mobile device to the Infotainment via a USB cable or browse and connect to a wireless network.
- › Tap the icon of the supported connection.

Telephone

Overview

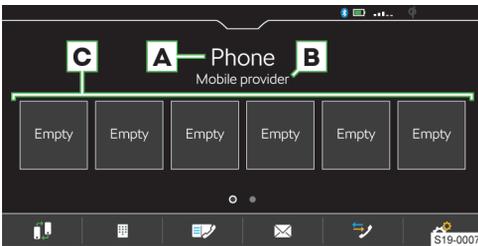
Display menu

- › Tap **PHONE**.

Or:

- › Tap **MENU** › ↗.

[i] If the menu **phone** is not displayed, check whether the mobile device is connected.



- A** Name of the connected telephone
 - ▶ **Tap:** Show list of previously connected phones
- B** Name of telephone service providers
 - ▶ If the symbol ▶ is displayed in front of the name, roaming is active.
- C** Preset buttons for preferred contacts
- ☰ Change the main telephone with the additional telephone
- ☰ Enter telephone number
- ☰ Contact list
- ✉ Text messages / emails
- ☰ Call lists
- ⚙ Settings

Conditions for connecting a telephone with Infotainment

- ✓ The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment and the telephone needs to be switched on.
The Bluetooth® function of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** › ☰ › *Manage mobile devices* › ☰ › *Bluetooth*.
- ✓ Visibility of the Infotainment is switched on.
The visibility of the Infotainment is switched on in the menu item **MENU** › ☰ › *Manage mobile devices* › ☰ › *Visibility*.

- ✓ The telephone is within signal range of the Infotainment's Bluetooth® unit.
- ✓ The telephone is compatible with Infotainment.

Telephone operation

Enter telephone number

- › In the **Phone** menu, tap on ☰.
- › Enter the telephone number using the numeric keypad that is displayed.

[i] The displayed numeric keypad can also be used for searching for contacts.

If, for example, the digits 32 are entered, contacts with the letter sequence DA, FA, EB etc. are displayed next to the numeric keypad.

List of telephone contacts

The list of telephone contacts is imported from the connected main telephone.

- › To **display** the contact list in the **phone** menu, tap on ☰.
- › To **search** within the list, tap on *Enter contact*.
- › Enter the details you wish to find.
- › To **establish a connection** with a contact, tap the functional area showing the desired contact.

If a contact has multiple telephone numbers, select the telephone number from the displayed list.

- › To display the **details** for a contact, tap ▶.

Establish a connection to the voice mailbox number

- › In the **Phone** menu, tap on ☰ › ☰.

Telephone conversation

Depending on the context of the telephone conversation, the following functions can be selected:

- 📞 End connection / reject incoming call / end call
- 📞 Answer an incoming call / return to the held call
- 📞 Switch the ringer off / on
- 📞 Hold a call
- 📞 Switch the microphone off / on
- 👤 Show details of the caller
- ✉ Reject an incoming call using an SMS message
- 📞 Answer a call from the second telephone during a call on the first telephone
The ongoing call on the first telephone is terminated by accepting the call.

- › To **switch the call tone from the speakers to the telephone**, go to **telephone** in the menu and tap on ☰ › *speakerphone*.
- › To **switch the call tone from the telephone to the speakers**, tap ▶.

Conference call

A conference call is a joint telephone conversation with a minimum of three and a maximum of six participants.

- › Make the next call during an ongoing conversation/conference.

Or:

- › Accept a new incoming call by tapping .
- › To **start** a conference call, tap .

During an ongoing conference call, the following functions can be selected depending on the context:

-  Hold the conference call and leave temporarily (the conference will continue in the background)
-  Return to the held conference call
-  Switch the microphone off / on
-  End conference call
-  Show details of the conference call

In the details of the conference call, depending on the connected telephone, the following functions can be selected:

-  Show details of the conference call participants
-  End conversation with the conference call participant
-  Conversation with a participant outside of the conference call

Send a text message

- › In the **Telephone**  >  menu, tap *Messages* >  *New SMS*.
- › Write a text message and confirm; a view of the message is displayed.

The message can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.

- › Search for or select the recipient of the message.
- › Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.
- › Tap on *Send*.

Display received text messages

- › In the **Telephone**  >  menu, tap *Messages* >  or .
- › Messages that are received are displayed as individual messages or as messages in a conversation, depending on the following setting.

To **switch the display of messages in a conversation on or off**, tap in the **Phone**  > menu *Show messages as conversation*.

- › To **switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new message **on or off**, tap in the **Phone**  > menu *New message notifications*.

I Infotainment offers the possibility to read the text message (context-dependent) by means of the generated Infotainment voice if  is tapped.

Send e-mails

- › In the **Telephone**  >  menu, tap *Emails* >  *New emails*.
- › Write an e-mail and confirm that an e-mail is displayed.
The text can be edited when the text area within the view is tapped.
- › Search for or select the recipient of the email.
- › Add more recipients or confirm selected recipients.
- › Enter the subject of the e-mail.
- › Tap on *Send*.

Show received e-mails

- › In the **Telephone**  >  menu, tap *Emails* > .
- › Select the desired e-mail.
- › To **switch graphic notifications** regarding the receipt of a new email **on or off**, tap in the **Phone**  > menu *New message notifications*.

Settings for Infotainment telephone functions

Telephone-Infotainment-Connection types

The way in which the telephone is connected depends on the number of phones currently connected to the Infotainment:

- ▶ **No telephone** - The telephone is connected as a main telephone.
- ▶ **One telephone** - The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.
- ▶ **Two telephones** - Select the telephone to be replaced.
- › To **switch between the main telephone and the additional telephone**, tap on  in the **Phone** menu.

Connect the telephone to Infotainment

- › Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
- › Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.

The unit name can be determined by the menu item **MENU** >  > *Manage mobile devices* >  > *Device name*.

- › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.

Connect Infotainment to a non-paired telephone - no telephone is connected

- › Tap on **PHONE**.

Or:

- › Tap on **MENU** > .
- › Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Connecting Infotainment to a non-paired telephone - another telephone is connected

- › Tap on **MENU** >  > *Manage mobile devices*.
- › Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.

- › Select the desired Bluetooth® profile.
 - › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
- The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

- › If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Connect Infotainment to a previously paired telephone

- › **MENU** > ☰ > *Manage mobile devices* .

Or:

- › **PHONE** > ☰ > *Select mobile phone* .

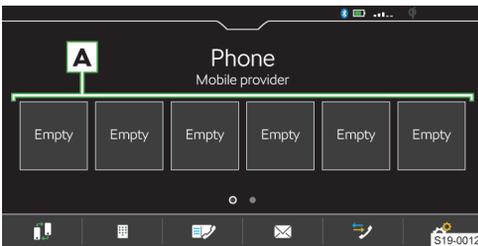
- › Select the desired device from the list of **previously connected devices**.

The telephone is connected as an additional telephone.

Or:

- › If two telephones are connected to the Infotainment, select the telephone to be replaced.

Manage preset buttons for preferred contacts



- › To **save** the desired preset button, hold **A**.
- › Select a contact from the displayed list.
- › If the contact contains multiple telephone numbers, choose the desired telephone number.
- › To **display the menu for deletion**, go to the **phone** menu ☰ > and tap on *Manage favourites* .

- › To delete **one** preset, tap on the list entry and confirm the deletion.

Or:

- › To delete **all** station buttons, tap *Clear all* and confirm the deletion.

Import telephone contacts

After first connecting the main telephone with Infotainment, telephone contacts will start to be imported into the Infotainment memory.

Infotainment can import up to 5000 telephone contacts together with contact pictures. Each contact can include max. 5 telephone numbers.

Depending on the type of telephone, import confirmation may be required.

Update telephone contacts

When re-connecting the telephone with Infotainment, an **automatic** update of the list is carried out.

- › For **manual** update of the list in the **phone** ☰ > menu tap on *Import contacts* .

Sort contacts in the phone book

- › In the **Telephone** ☰ > menu *Sort by*: Tap and select the sorting type.

Ringtone

Some phones do not allow the use of the telephone ringtone; instead, the Infotainment ringtone is used.

- › For **setting the Infotainment ringtone** in the **phone** ☰ > menu *select the ringtone* .
- › Select the ringtone.

Number for the voice mailbox

- › For **setting the voice mailbox number** in the **phone** ☰ > menu *Mailbox number*: .
- › Enter the voice mailbox number.

Turn the graphic notice regarding receiving a new message/email on or off

When the feature is on, the new message icon appears on the status bar and in the feature area for the messages when a new message/e-mail is received.

- › In the **Telephone** ☰ > menu *New message notifications* .

Simultaneous calls

This applies to some countries.

Depending on the connected telephone, it is possible to answer the next incoming call and hold the previous call.

- › To switch on simultaneous calls, tap on **telephone** ☰ > *Parallel talks*.

Wi-Fi

Functionality

The Wi-Fi can be used for the internet connection or for the SmartLinkConnection.

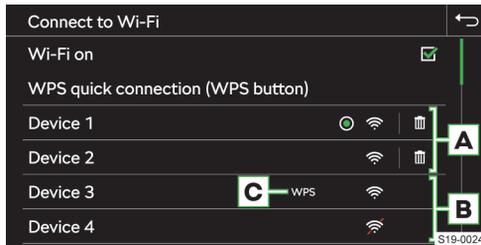
The Infotainment hotspot can connect up to 8 mobile devices. At the same time, the Infotainment can be connected to another hotspot.

- › To display the list of connected mobile devices, tap **MENU** > ☰ > *Wi-Fi* > *Infotainment system as hotspot* > *Connected devices*.

Overview of available hotspots

Display available hotspots

- › Tap **MENU** > > Wi-Fi > Wi-Fi.



- A** Previously connected hotspots
- B** Available hotspots
- C** The hotspot supports the WPS connection
- Currently connected hotspot
- Delete information about the hotspot connection
- 📶 Wi-Fi signal strength of the hotspot
- 📶 The Wi-Fi signal from the hotspot is not available

Function restriction

The Infotainment system can only be connected to a hotspot with WPA2 access protection.

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

- i** Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Settings

Connect a mobile device to the Infotainment hotspot

- › Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi hotspot in the menu item **MENU** > > Wi-Fi > Infotainment system as hotspot > Use as hotspot.
- › Turn on the Wi-Fi on the mobile device.
- › In the list of available Wi-Fi devices, look for Infotainment Wi-Fi.

The name of the Infotainment is taken from the menu item **MENU** > > Wi-Fi > Infotainment system as hotspot > Network name..

- › Select the Infotainment hotspot and enter the required password.

The password for connecting to the Infotainment hotspot is taken from the menu item **MENU** > > Wi-Fi > Infotainment system as hotspot > Network key.

- › Confirm the connection.

Connect Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

- › Turn on the Infotainment's Wi-Fi unit in the menu item **MENU** > > Wi-Fi > WLAN: > WiFi active switch on
- › Select the desired hotspot in the list of available hotspots.
- › Enter the password for connecting to mobile devices.

- i** Infotainment stores passwords for previously connected hotspots.

Security level of the Infotainment hotspot

The security level is set at WPA2 and cannot be changed.

Activate/deactivate data transfer between the Infotainment and the connected device

- › To turn data transmission on or off, tap **MENU** > > Wi-Fi > Infotainment system as hotspot > Connected devices > .

Change the name of the Infotainment hotspot

- ▶ Tap **MENU** > > Wi-Fi > Infotainment system as hotspot > Network name..
- ▶ Enter the name and confirm.

Change password for connection to Infotainment hotspot

The password must be a minimum of 12 and a maximum of 63 characters.

- ▶ **MENU** > > Wi-Fi > Infotainment system as a hotspot > Network key .
- ▶ Enter and confirm the password.

Quick connection of Infotainment to the mobile device hotspot

- › On the mobile device, turn on the hotspot, its visibility, and the option for WPS connection.
- › **MENU** > > Wi-Fi > Wi-Fi: Tap > WPS quick connection (WPS button).

Automatic WPS connection

- › Tap **MENU** > > Wi-Fi > Quick connection to Infotainment system.
- › In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS.
- › Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Manual WPS connection

- › In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via WPS PIN.

The mobile device display will show the WPS PIN for connecting to the Infotainment.

- › Tap **MENU** > > Wi-Fi > Quick connection to Infotainment system > > WPS PIN.
- › Enter the WPS PIN in the Infotainment and confirm.

- › Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Automatic connection using the QR code

- › **MENU** › › *Wi-Fi* › Tap *quick connection with infotainment system*.
- › In the mobile device, switch on the option for connection via QR Code.
- › With the mobile device, read the QR code displayed on the Infotainment screen.
- › Wait for the connection to be established and, if necessary, confirm the respective messages.

Tips for a perfect connection

- Keep only the hotspot to be connected switched on and switch off the other hotspots.
- ▶ Delete unused hotspots. This shortens the time required to establish a connection.
- ▶ For some hotspots, the connection takes longer, so wait for the connection to finish.
- ▶ If the connection is interrupted, recheck the available hotspots and repeat the connection.

SmartLink

Functionality

SmartLink offers the ability to display and operate certified applications from a connected mobile device in the Infotainment screen.

Certification may be conditional upon the use of the latest update to the particular SmartLink application.

Applications include, for example, apps for route guidance, telephoning, listening to music, etc.

Mobile devices can be connected via a USB cable or WiFi.

Supported connection types

SmartLink supports the following connection types:

- ▶ Android Auto
- ▶ Apple CarPlay
- ▶ MirrorLink

Overview of the SmartLink connection

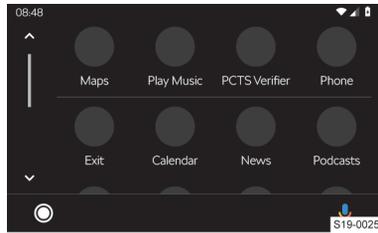
Menu SmartLink

- › Tap **MENU** › .



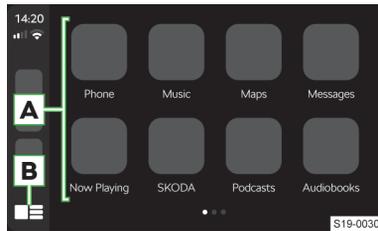
- A** Previously connected device
- B** Currently connection device
- Display information about SmartLink
- Disconnection of the active connection
- Disconnection of the active connection
- Settings in SmartLink menu

Android Auto



- Overview of running applications, phone calls, incoming text messages, and more.
- Turn on voice control (Google Voice)

Apple CarPlay



- A** List of available applications
- B** Depending on the duration of operation:
 - ▶ **Tap:** Return to the menu Apple CarPlay
 - ▶ **Hold:** Turn on voice control (Siri)

MirrorLink



⊖ It is not possible to operate the application while driving

- Return to the menu SmartLink
- ☰ List of running applications
- ☰ Display of the last running application in connected mobile devices
- ⚙ Settings

Connection conditions

General connection conditions

- ✓ The mobile device supports the type of SmartLink connection Android Auto, Apple CarPlay or MirrorLink.
- ✓ Mobile devices, as well as the type of SmartLink connection, are supported in the respective market.
- ✓ Some connected mobile devices require the mobile device to be "unlocked".

Conditions for Android Auto

- ✓ The device to be connected must have Android Auto connection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Android Auto connection can be found on the Google, Inc. website.
- ✓ The Android Auto application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the mobile device to be turned on.
- ✓ Connect the mobile device for the first time when the vehicle is stationary.

Conditions for Apple CarPlay

- ✓ The device to be connected must have Apple CarPlay connection.

A list of devices, supported regions and applications that support the Apple CarPlay connection can be found on the Apple Inc website.
- ✓ Siri voice control is on.
- ✓ The data connection in the mobile device is switched on.

Conditions for MirrorLink

- ✓ The device to be connected must have MirrorLink connection.

A list of devices and applications that support the MirrorLink connection can be found on the websites of Car Connectivity Consortium®.
- ✓ The MirrorLink application needs to be installed on the mobile device.
- ✓ Some applications require the data connection in the connected mobile device to be turned on.

Operation

Operation of the running MirrorLink application

- ☰ Display of control surfaces at the bottom
- ☰ Display of control surfaces at the top
- ☰ Return to the menu MirrorLink

Restriction

Restriction of the Wi-Fi connection

In some countries, the Wi-Fi connection is restricted for legal reasons. When crossing the border of the country in question, the connection with a mobile device connected via Wi-Fi can be ended or restricted.

ℹ Find out about country-specific legal restrictions. If necessary, switch off the Wi-Fi manually.

Restriction of SmartLink applications while driving

For reasons of safety, the operation of some SmartLink applications while driving is not possible or only limited.

Restriction of the navigation function

If route guidance is currently being carried out through Infotainment, this is ended when you start route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application.

If there is route guidance in the Apple CarPlay application, it is ended by starting the destination guidance using Infotainment.

SmartLink settings

Apple CarPlay - Connection via USB

- Turn on the Infotainment.
- Turn on the mobile device.
- Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
- Choose to connect via Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

- Turn on Bluetooth® and Bluetooth® visibility in the Apple mobile device.
- Tap on MENU > ⚙ > Manage mobile devices.

- › In the displayed list, look for and select the desired device with the symbol .
- › Follow the instructions on the Infotainment screen and confirm the Bluetooth® pairing.
- › If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.

Apple CarPlay - Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum iOS version is 9.
- ✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.

- › In the mobile device, turn on the CarPlay function.
- › Press and hold the  button on the multifunction steering wheel.

The Infotainment screen displays a connection message with the name of the Bluetooth® unit of the Infotainment.

- › Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
- › Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
- › If necessary, confirm the PIN.
- › In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Apple CarPlay.

Apple CarPlay - Disconnect

- › In the Apple CarPlay menu, tap on the function area "ŠKODA".
- › Tap on .

Android Auto - Connection via USB

- › Turn on the Infotainment.
- › Turn on the mobile device.
- › Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
- › Choose to connect via Android Auto.

Android Auto - Connection via Wi-Fi from Infotainment

- › Tap on MENU >  >  > mobile devices.
- › Select the desired device from the list of **available devices**.
- › Select the Bluetooth® hands-free profile.
- › Confirm the PIN; enter it if necessary and then confirm.
- › If another device is connected to the Infotainment, select the device to be replaced.
- › From the list of **known devices**, select the desired device with the  symbol.

Android Auto - Connect via Wi-Fi from mobile devices

To establish a connection, the following conditions must be met:

- ✓ The minimum Android version is 5.
- ✓ No other mobile device can be connected via SmartLink.
- ✓ Wi-Fi and Bluetooth® functionality is switched on in the Infotainment system.
- › Find available Bluetooth® devices on the phone.
- › Select the Infotainment Bluetooth® unit.
- › If necessary, confirm the PIN.
- › In the Infotainment screen, select the connection type Android Auto.

Android Auto - Disconnect

- › In the Android Auto  > menu, tap "Return to ŠKODA".
- › Tap on .

MirrorLink - Connection via USB

- › Turn on the Infotainment.
- › Turn on the mobile device.
- › Connect the mobile device to the front USB input using a cable.
- › Choose to connect through MirrorLink.

MirrorLink - Disconnect

- › In the MirrorLink menu, tap on .
- › Tap on .

Change to another device / connection type
Infotainment allows you to switch between currently connected devices and the connection type.

- › Tap on MENU > .
- › Select the desired device or connection type.

Navigation

Navigation announcements

Infotainment route guidance takes place using graphic driving recommendations and navigation announcements.

The navigation announcements are generated by the Infotainment system. Navigation announcement clarity (e.g. road or city name) cannot always be guaranteed.

Repeat the last navigation announcement

- › Tap on ... > .

Turn off navigation announcements

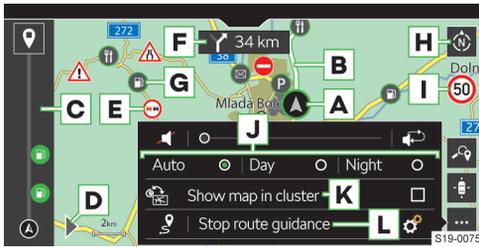
- › Tap on ... > .

Navigation overviews

Display menu

- › Tap MENU > .

Map overview



- A** Vehicle position
- B** Route
- C** Route view
- 📍 End route guidance
- D** Display the destination input and route view menu
- E** Traffic obstruction
- F** Following driving recommendation
- G** POI
- H** Change map orientation
 - ▶ North-facing 2D map
 - ▶ 2D map facing the direction of travel
 - ▶ 3D map facing the direction of travel
- I** Road signs for the affected route section
- 🔍 Find destination
- 📍 Centre the map on the vehicle position
- ⋮ **Display the settings menu**
- 🔊 Turn off navigation announcements
- 🔁 Repeat the last navigation announcement
- J** Display map in accordance with the following setting
 - ▶ Auto - Map in day / night mode depending on the vehicle lighting currently switched on
 - ▶ Day - Map in day mode
 - ▶ Night - Map in night mode
- K** Display navigation in the digital instrument cluster
- L** End route guidance
- 📏 Show the entire route
- ⚙️ Settings

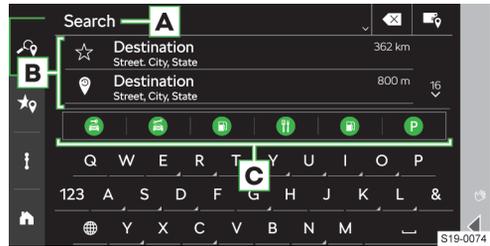
Map display in the digital instrument cluster

The map can be displayed in the digital instrument cluster or on the Infotainment display.

- ▶ To change the display tap ⋮ > 📍 in the Navigation menu.

Find destination

- ▶ Tap ▶ > 🔍.



- A** Input line
- B** List of recently searched destinations
- C** POI categories
 - ▶ Tap: search for the selected category
- ✓ Show destination list
- 📍 Enter destination via address / find destination

Select the destination you are looking for

- ▶ Enter the details for the destination search.
- ▶ Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Selecting the destination entered via the address

- ▶ Tap on 📍.

A menu for entering the destination via the address is displayed.

- ▶ Enter the required information.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

List of stored destinations

- ▶ Tap on ▶ > 📍.



- A** List of stored destinations
- B** Select category of stored destinations
 - ▶ 📍 - Favourites
 - ▶ 📍 - Last destinations
 - ▶ 📞 - Telephone contact destinations

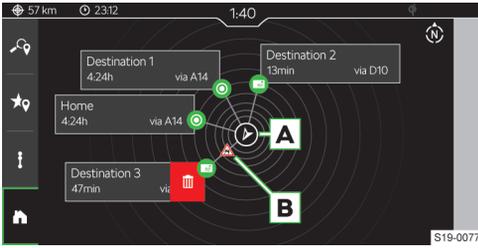
Selecting the stored destination

- ▶ Select the category of stored destinations.
- ▶ Select the desired destination.

Destination details are displayed with the option of starting route guidance.

Recommended destinations

› Tap on › › h.



A North-facing vehicle position

B Traffic obstruction

☒ Delete the recommended destination

The view can display up to 5 recommended destinations in the following categories:

- ▶ Destination – home address
- ▶ Destination – business address
- ▶ Favourites
- ▶ Last destinations

Destination alignment depends on the direction in relation to the current vehicle position. The functional surface with the destination displays information about the estimated travel time to the destination.

If the vehicle has active online services and there is a traffic obstruction on the route to the destination, the traffic obstruction icon will be displayed.

Delete the recommended destination

- › Touch the functional surface for the recommended destination and swipe left.
- › Tap on ☒.

Selecting destination by tapping the map point

- › Tap the desired item or the POI icon in the map.



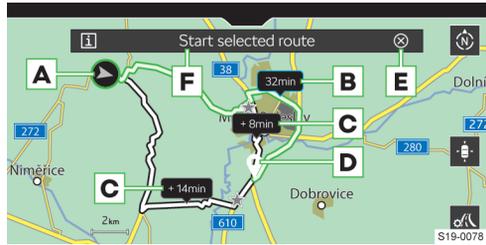
A Show destination details with the following possible settings:

- ▶ ☆ - Save destination as a favourite
- ▶ ★ - Delete favourites
- ▶ ☒ - Set destination as a starting point for route guidance in demo mode

B Start direct route guidance

C Route calculation

Route calculation



A Current vehicle position

B Proposed fastest route

C Alternative routes

D Destination position

E 15 s time countdown before automatic start of the route guidance

- › Tap: Interrupt time countdown

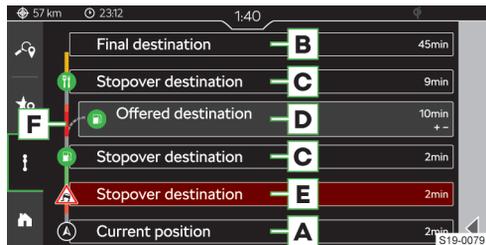
F Start route guidance

☒ Show information on the selected route

⚙️ Set parameters for route calculation

Route overview

› Tap on › › i.



A Information on current vehicle position

B Final route destination

Tap: the following menu items can be selected:

- › Show on map
- › Stop route guidance

C Route stopover

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.

- › Show on map
- › Add stopover destination

D Destination provided by Infotainment on the route

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.

- › Show on map
- › Delete

E Traffic obstruction on the route

Tap: the following menu items can be selected.

- › Show on map
- › Avoid

F Route view

Changing route destinations

In the route overview, it is possible to exchange the destination and the intermediate destinations with each other and thus change their order.

- › Hold the line with the desired destination until the functional surface for the destination becomes free.
- › Move the destination to the desired position and release the functional surface.

The route is re-calculated.

Overview of traffic density

When ŠKODA online services are activated, traffic density information can be displayed in the form of the following colour scale in the route view **F**.

Low density — — — — — **High density**

— Traffic density information is not available



▶ Zoom out of the map



▶ Rotate the map

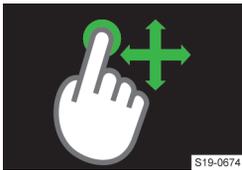
Limitation

Infotainment may give incorrect driving recommendations if the road conditions or the traffic do not match the navigation data. This can lead to the route guidance being carried out using a different route or proposing a change of direction in a one-way street.

Information for updating the navigation data must be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

Touch operation

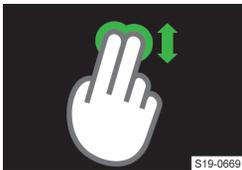
Gesture control



▶ Move map



▶ Enter destination by tapping the map item



▶ Switch 2D/3D map display



▶ Zoom into the map

Settings

Avoiding traffic obstructions

If the function is switched on and the Infotainment receives information about a traffic obstruction on the route from online traffic information, the route is recalculated.

Infotainment may suggest a detour to avoid traffic obstructions, depending on the following settings:

- › ... > > Route guidance > Tap on Avoid traffic incidents .
- › Select the desired menu item.

Showing information on the destination / waypoint

The status line displays information on the distance and travel time to the destination, depending on the following setting.

- › ... > > Route guidance > Show information for: .
- › Select the desired menu item for the destination type.

Showing arrival time information in the destination / driving time

The status line displays information on the travel time depending on the following setting.

- › ... > > Route guidance > Time display: .
- › Select the desired menu item.

Switching display of country-specific speed limits on / off

When the function is switched on, the country-specific speed limits are displayed when crossing national borders.

- › Tap ... ›  › *Route guidance* › *Country information at border crossings*.

Switching the display of road signs on motorways and expressways on / off

When the function is switched on, Infotainment displays traffic and information signs on motorways and expressways.

- › Tap ... ›  › *Route guidance* › *Information signs on motorways and dual carriageways*.

Switching the fuel warning on / off

When the function is switched on and the fuel supply reaches the reserve area, a warning message appears with the option of going to the nearest petrol station.

- › Tap ... ›  › *Route guidance* › *Fuel warning*.

Switching the speed limit warning on / off

- › Tap ... ›  › *Route guidance* › *Road signs*.

- › Set the note type and the value for exceeding the permissible speed.

Settings for trailer operation

To calculate the correct route for trailer operation, switch on trailer inclusion.

- › Tap ... ›  › *Route guidance* › *Trailer* › *Include trailer*.

Set the maximum speed for trailer operation to correctly calculate the route time.

- › Tap ... ›  › *Route guidance* › *Trailer* › *Maximum speed for trailers*.

- › Set the maximum speed for the trailer.

Setting navigation announcements

- › Tap ... ›  › *navigation announcements*.

- › Select and set the desired menu item.

Show preferred POI categories

Favourite POI categories are displayed on the map and provided in the destination search.

- › Tap ... ›  › *Basic functions* › *Define preferred POI categories*.

- › Set favourite categories.

Setting home address

The defined destination of the home address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

- › Tap ... ›  › *Basic functions* › *Enter home address*.

Setting business address

The defined destination of the business address is displayed in the overview of recommended destinations.

- › Tap ... ›  › *Basic functions* › *Enter business address*.

Switching demo mode on / off

In demo mode, the route guidance from the starting point of the demo mode to the selected destination is simulated.

When the function is switched on, Infotainment issues a query before the start of route guidance as to whether the route guidance should be carried out in the normal way or in demo mode.

- › ... ›  › *Tap on Basic functions* › *Demo mode*.

Defining the starting point of the demo mode

- › Select or locate the desired destination to be the starting point of demo mode.
- › In the displayed destination details, tap *More* › .

Updating the navigation database

Information for updating the navigation database must be requested from a ŠKODA partner.

Automatic update

Infotainment automatically carries out an update if the following conditions are met:

- ✓ The "Infotainment Online" online services are activated.
- ✓ An update of the navigation database for the current vehicle position or route destination is available.

Determining the navigation database version

- › Tap *MENU* ›  › *System information*.

Online Services

ŠKODA Connect

Regulations

The rights and obligations of the contracting parties with regard to the provision of these services are regulated in an independent agreement. Current legal documents regarding the ŠKODA Connect services can be found on the ŠKODA Connect Portal and the ŠKODA Connect application.

Functionality

ŠKODA Connect services allow you to connect the vehicle to the online world. They thus represent an extension of the vehicle and Infotainment functions.

The ŠKODA Connect services are not part of the vehicle's equipment. These will be published separately on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, in the ŠKODA Connect application or in Infotainment, if Infotainment allows this.

The offer of ŠKODA Connect services depends on the type of vehicle and its trim level, Infotainment and country.

ŠKODA Connect website

The ŠKODA Connect website contains e.g. the current information on the ŠKODA Connect services, the reference to the ŠKODA Connect Portal or the option to download the ŠKODA Connect application.

The website is opened after reading the following QR code or the reference:

<http://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect>



ŠKODA Connect Portal website

The ŠKODA Connect Portal website enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connect services, service management or remote access to the vehicle.

The website is opened after reading the following QR code or the reference:

<http://go.skoda.eu/connect-portal>



Requirements

Terms of use of the ŠKODA Connect services

- ✓ A main user is registered in the vehicle.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ A user currently logged in is authorized to use the ŠKODA Connect services.
- ✓ The protection level set for sending personal data enables the use of ŠKODA Connect services.

Availability of the ŠKODA Connect services

Availability depends on the following conditions:

- ▶ Cellular networks through which the connection to the ŠKODA Connect services is ensured are available.
- ▶ The availability, functioning, connection speed and technology used in the mobile network can be different in the respective countries and are dependent on the mobile network operator.
- ▶ In areas where this is insufficient signal, e.g. in underground garages, functionality may be limited.
- ▶ The ŠKODA Connect services are available for your vehicle, infotainment and the respective country.
- ▶ The availability can be checked on the following ŠKODA Connect website:

<http://go.skoda.eu/skoda-connect-availability>



Availability status of the ŠKODA Connect services

The availability of the services is indicated by the colour of the  symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

- ▶ **White** - ŠKODA Connect services are available.
- ▶ **Grey** - ŠKODA Connect services are not available.

ŠKODA Connect application

Functionality

ŠKODA Connect application

The ŠKODA Connect application enables, for example, user registration, ordering of ŠKODA Connect services or remote access to the vehicle.

The application can be downloaded to the mobile device after scanning the following QR code or link:

<http://go.skoda.eu/skodaconnectapp>



Requirements

- ✓ The user has one ŠKODA ID account linked to the vehicle.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active in the vehicle.

User registration and activation of the ŠKODA Connect services

Functionality

User registration will provide you with a ŠKODA ID user account that can be used in all ŠKODA applications and services.

User registration for the ŠKODA Connect services can be done at the following locations.

- ▶ ŠKODA Connect Portal website
- ▶ ŠKODA Connect application
- ▶ Infotainment which supports this function

[i] When registering, create an S-PIN. You will need the S-PIN to register for certain ŠKODA Connect services as well as to register for the protected user account.

Settings

Registration and activation of online services

Applies to Infotainment Swing and Bolero.

- ▶ Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
- ▶ **MENU** >  > ŠKODA Connect (Online Services) > Registration .
- ▶ Enter and confirm the registration PIN you have received during user and vehicle registration on the ŠKODA Connect Portalwebsite or in the ŠKODA Connect application.
- ▶ Wait for message *Vehicle activation is complete.* to appear.
- ▶ Confirm any messages on the screen.

Register users in Infotainment

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

- ▶ Switch on the Infotainment and in the displayed welcome window tap *Switch users > Register* and follow the instructions on the screen.

Or:

- ▶ **MENU** >  >  > New user > Register and follow the instructions on the screen.

[i] To complete registration, access to the e-mail box entered during registration is required.

Activate ŠKODA Connect services when registering the main user

After the main user has been registered, the Infotainment prompts you to activate ŠKODA Connect services.

To complete the activation, it is necessary to have two original vehicle keys with you.

- ▶ Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Activate ŠKODA Connect services of another registered user

- ▶ **MENU** >  >  > Tap *Become main user* .
- ▶ Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Setting personal data protection

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data can be found on the following website:

 <http://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data>



As a contracting party with regard to the use of the ŠKODA Connect services, you must ensure the protection of personal data and the right to privacy.

Inform the vehicle user and passengers that the vehicle is transmitting user data and using localization services. Failure to provide information can violate the rights of vehicle users and passengers.

Localisation services include, for example, information on the last parking position, area notification or speed notification.

If the passengers do not agree to the use of the localization services, switch off the services by setting the respective protection level for personal data.

Functionality

User and vehicle data as well as information from the localization services are sent when using the ŠKODA Connect services.

The level of protection for personal data set influences what is sent.

The set level of protection for personal data influences data transmission using eSIM. This does not affect data transmission of a device connected via WLAN.

Settings

The legally required services, e.g. emergency call, cannot be switched off.

Every vehicle user can set the protection level of personal data.

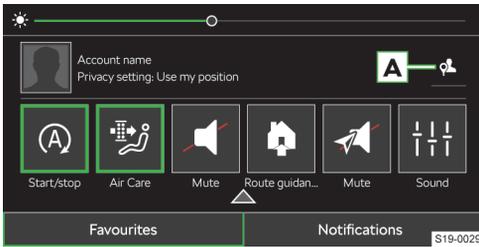
The level of protection of personal data is linked to the user account. After the user has logged on, this is set according to the level last set.

It is necessary to activate localisation services for the full function of some ŠKODA Connect services.

Settings in the control centre



› Open the Infotainment control centre by holding down the bar at the top of the screen and pulling it down.



Display example in Infotainment Amundsen

A Tapping the symbol displays a menu for setting the protection level for personal data.

Tap Set-up in user management

- › MENU > > > Privacy and service management .
- › Set the desired level of protection of personal data.

Maximum privacy

- ▶ All ŠKODA Connect services other than the services you are currently using are switched off.
- ▶ All localization services are switched off. The vehicle position information is not shared.
- ▶ Information transmission via eSIM is switched off.
- ▶ No online updates available.

No location

- ▶ All localization services ŠKODA Connect are switched off. The vehicle position information is not shared.
- ▶ Information transmission via eSIM is switched on.
- ▶ All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Use my position

- ▶ Localisation services ŠKODA Connect are enabled. Information on vehicle position is not provided to other people.

- ▶ Information on the vehicle position is not available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the ŠKODA Connect application.

- ▶ Information transmission via eSim is switched on.
- ▶ All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Share my location

- ▶ Localization services ŠKODA Connect are enabled. The vehicle position information is available for all services which need to know the vehicle's position.
- ▶ Information on the vehicle position is available on the ŠKODA Connect Portal web pages and in the ŠKODA Connect application.
- ▶ Information transmission via eSim is switched on.
- ▶ All functions that require a connection via eSIM are active.

Collection of anonymised data

When the protection level of personal data is set **Use location** and **Share my location** the vehicle can collect and send anonymised data to improve the services of selected third parties.

It is exclusively anonymous data without any connection to the specific vehicle, the vehicle owner or other authorized users.

User management

What you should be mindful of

When buying an older vehicle with ŠKODA Connect services, it is possible that the services are active and the main user is the previous owner of the vehicle. The previous owner can still have the possibility to control the vehicle functions and receive information about the users and the vehicle.

Therefore, we recommend deleting the previous main user. Then, log in with your own user account and set yourself as the main user of the vehicle.

If you register a new user and select yourself as the main user during registration, the previous main user is automatically overwritten.

□ The type of user and vehicle information to be sent can be influenced by setting the protection level of personal data.

Functionality

User accounts

User Management displays the accounts of the last active users. The following activities can be carried out in user management:

- ▶ Select a user account
- ▶ Register user

- ▶ Active ŠKODA Connect services
- ▶ Add and remove user accounts
- ▶ Set the main users
- ▶ Set account security

Overview

Main user

The main user provides a registered user with activated ŠKODA Connect services and a vehicle associated with his account.

The main user can take full advantage of the personalisation features.

The main user has full control over the settings and operation of the vehicle.

All settings are saved in the main user's personal online account.

User with a ŠKODA Connect online account

The user was not selected by the main user, but has his own ŠKODA Connect online account.

The user can take full advantage of the personalisation features.

All settings are saved in the registered user's personal online account.

Guest

A guest account is anonymous and will in no way synchronise with ŠKODA Connect services.

All changes to settings related to this account are stored exclusively in the vehicle.

Requirements

The following conditions must be met for unlimited use of the management of user accounts and their synchronization with online accounts:

- ✓ A main user with active ŠKODA Connect services is registered in Infotainment.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Operation

Log in user

After switching on the ignition and Infotainment are switched on, the introductory login screen for the last user account used is displayed.

[i] The introductory log on screen cannot be skipped. Without registering, the Infotainment cannot be used.

- › Confirm the log-in.

When you log in to a secure user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm the login.

Or:

- › Select the menu item for switching user.
A menu containing available users is displayed.
- › Select the desired account.
- › When you log in to a secure user account, enter the S-PIN and confirm the login.

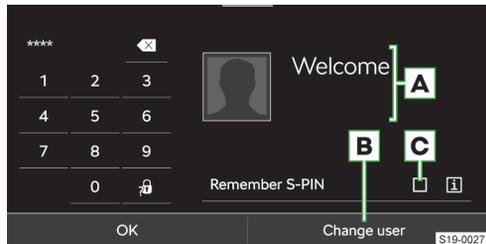
Or:

- › Select the menu item for switching user.
A menu containing available users is displayed.
- › If you are a new user tap *New user* to register the user.
- › Follow the instructions in the Infotainment screen.

Log in to the protected user account

Some user accounts can be protected. Protected accounts are shown in the user list with the icon **u**.

To **log in** to the protected user account you need the S-PIN created when creating the user account on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website, in the ŠKODA Connect application or when registering the user in Infotainment.



- A** User name
- B** Turn off logging in to the account using the S-PIN
- C** Display of user account management

- [u]** Display information about the S-PIN
- [u]** Display information about restoring the S-PIN

[i] User verification by entering the S-PIN can be switched on/off in the menu item **MENU** > **u** > **u** > *Protect user profile* > *Protect user profile with S-PIN* will be switched on/off.

Restore S-PIN

Your S-PIN can be restored on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.

- › After restoring the S-PIN, register again for the correct functioning of the ŠKODA Connect application in the vehicle as the main user.
- › If you are the main user in several vehicles, register again in each vehicle.

Log out user

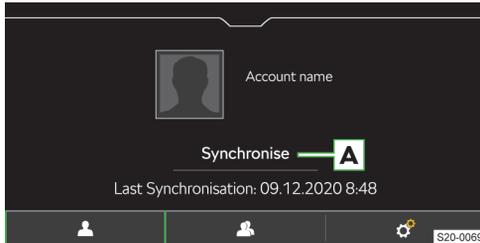
Applies to Infotainment Swing and Bolero.

When the ignition is switched off, the logout screen is displayed and the user is automatically logged off.

Settings

User management

> Tap MENU > 👤



- 👤 Details of the currently selected user
 - ▶ 👤 - A user account protected by the S-PIN
- 👤 Switch to another user / enter a new user
- ⚙️ Settings
- A** Online synchronization of the user account with information about the last synchronization

Tap Become main user

> MENU > 👤 > ⚙️ > Tap *Become main user* and follow the instructions on the screen.

Delete user

- > To display the user accounts, tap MENU > 👤 > ⚙️ > *Delete users*.
- > To delete the user, select the user and confirm the deletion.

I Deleting the main user account will delete the shared user accounts.

Delete the current user account

- > MENU > 👤 > ⚙️ > Tap *Delete user profile*.
- > Confirm the deletion.

Delete all users

Resetting the Infotainment to the factory settings will delete all user accounts.

- > Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
- > Tap MENU > ⚙️.
- > *Restore factory settings* select and confirm the reset.

I To check the factory reset was successful, we recommend that you check the deletion of the user accounts and the main user account.

Personalisation

Usage

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The personalisation service allows you to set, set and store vehicle settings.

The personalisation service is connected to the user accounts. Any change to the set personalised functions is automatically stored in the active user account.

If the vehicle is within range of a contractual mobile phone network, personalisable settings are stored in the ŠKODA ID online user account after the ignition is switched off.

By registering for a user account in another ŠKODA brand vehicle, the custom functions associated with the user account are set according to vehicle type, equipment and infotainment.

Settings

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

Switch personalisation service on / off

- > MENU > 👤 > ⚙️ > *Privacy settings and manage services*.
- > In the displayed list of online services, select the service **personalisation**.
- > Switch the service off / on.

Management of online services

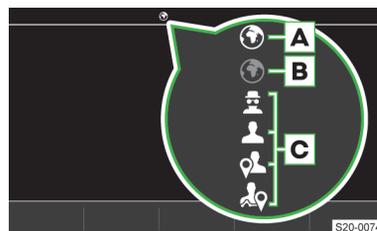
Usage

The following activities can be carried out in service management:

- ▶ Set protection of personal data
- ▶ Show the list of available services
- ▶ Receive information about the status of the services
- ▶ Receive information about the validity of the services
- ▶ Switch the use of the services on/off

Connection status of the online services

The connection status of the online services of ŠKODA Connect online services is indicated by an icon in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.



A The ŠKODA Connect online services are available.

B The ŠKODA Connect online services are not available.

C The set personal data protection level

 Maximum privacy

 No position data

 Use my position

 Share my position

Conditions

- ✓ A main user with active ŠKODA Connect services is registered in Infotainment.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Operation

Show list of online services

› MENU ›  ›  › Tap Privacy settings and manage services .

Show details of services

› Select the desired service from the list of online services.

Details about the service may contain the following information and functions:

- ▶ Status of the service
- ▶ Reason for the unavailability of the service
- ▶ Name of the group of online services in which the respective service is found
- ▶ Expiry date of the service's validity
- ▶ Switch use of the service on/off

Settings

Switch on/off use of the service

- › MENU ›  ›  › Tap Privacy settings and manage services .
- › Select the desired service from the list of online services displayed.
- › Switch the desired service on / off.

 The use of the service applies to all user accounts. The service can only be used if it is available.

eSIM data connection

Usage

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

For ŠKODA Connect services, the prepaid e-SIM data connection for online services can be used.

The data connection can be shared with another 8 connected devices using Wi-Fi.

Further information on the function of the data connection, user registration, availability of the data connection and on the overview of the data plans and countries, with the possibility of obtaining them, can be found on the following website:

 <https://skoda.cubiclecom.com>



Operation

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

Show ŠKODA Connect data packets

› MENU ›  › Data connection › Data packets .

The following information is displayed in the overview:

- ▶ Overview of the plans purchased
- ▶ Use of the data plans
- ▶ The plan is valid

The validity of the plan expires when the plan is fully used or when the period of validity expires.

Settings

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

Switch the use of the ŠKODA Connect services on/off.

› MENU ›  › Data connection › Integrated data connection (eSIM) .

Online System Update

Usage

The online update enables software updates for the connectivity control unit (OCU) and supported Infotainment type.

The Infotainment automatically indicates a possible online update by showing a message on the Infotainment screen. Infotainment also offers the option of downloading the update or postponing the download process.

Further information on online updates, their availability in the respective countries, on supported vehicles and Infotainment systems can be found on the following website:

<http://go.skoda.eu/online-system-update>



i If the download of the update is postponed, the option to download the update will be offered again the next time the ignition and Infotainment are switched on.

Operation

Download update

- › Turn on the ignition and switch on Infotainment.
- › Follow the instructions and information displayed on the Infotainment screen.
- › Confirm the download in the Infotainment.

The download process can be cancelled at any time. When the ignition is switched on again, the download process is automatically restored.

The download time depends on the speed and quality of the mobile network, the file size, and the type of update.

Install the update

⚠ WARNING

The connectivity control unit (OCU) or Infotainment may not function during installation. In this event, there are no emergency calls, no automatic emergency calls in the event of an accident and none of the ŠKODA Connect services will be available.

- ▶ Install the update while the vehicle is stationary.
- › Park the vehicle safely.
- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Confirm the software installation on the Infotainment screen.

The vehicle can be left while the installation continues.

- › Switch on the ignition and Infotainment after installation or return to the vehicle.
- › Check the message regarding successful installation on the Infotainment screen.

i The emergency call indicator light does not light up during installation.

i After a successful installation, the emergency call indicator lamp lights up green.

Requirements

The following conditions must be met for a successful update:

- ✓ The ignition and the Infotainment are switched on.

- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services were activated in the vehicle.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.
- ✓ The vehicle has an internet connection.
- ✓ The *Maximum privacy* is not set in the vehicle.
- ✓ The online update is available in the relevant country.
- ✓ The charge state of the 12-volt vehicle battery is sufficient.

Self-help

If any of the following events occur while downloading the update or during installation, please contact a service provider:

- ▶ A message appears in the Infotainment screen regarding an incorrect download or installation of the update.
- ▶ The Infotainment screen goes out after switching on.
- ▶ The emergency call indicator lamp lights up red.

Shop

Usage

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

In Infotainment in the Shop menu, the following activities can be carried out

- ▶ Order new functions and services
 - ▶ Extend purchased functions and services
 - ▶ Buy subsequent ŠKODA Connect data plans
- Devices connected via Wi-Fi can also access the data plans.

Further information on the data plans can be found on the following website:

<https://skoda.cubictelcom.com>



The functions and services can be subject to a runtime limitation or even be unlimited.

The functions and services that are purchased are available to all vehicle users.

The functions and services can also be purchased later on the website ŠKODA Connect Portal.

Overview

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

- › Tap MENU › .
- › Select the desired function or service from the list that is displayed.

Requirements

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The availability of the services and functions depends on the vehicle and Infotainment type as well as being country-specific.

The following conditions must be met to activate new services and functions:

- ✓ Infotainment supports the activation of new services and functions.
- ✓ The vehicle trim level enables the use of new services or functions.
If a service or a function is linked to a trim level that is not available with the vehicle, find out from a specialist garage whether the vehicle trim can be added.
- ✓ The main vehicle user is logged on.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.
- ✓ The charge state of the 12-volt vehicle battery is sufficient.

An active data connection is required for certain services or functions. The connection may be chargeable.

Activated services and functions are not linked to the validity period of ŠKODA Connect services.

Limitation

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The functions are linked to the vehicle, not to the main user account. These cannot be transferred to any other vehicle in which the user logs on.

Information call

Usage

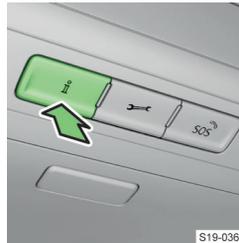
The info call can be used if there are problems with the ŠKODA Connect services or for information regarding the products and services of the ŠKODA brand.

Requirements

- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to  Maximum privacy .

To send information about the position of the vehicle, the protection level of personal data must be set to  Share my position .

Operation



- › Press the  button.

Breakdown call

Usage

The breakdown call can be used in the event of a breakdown.

By pressing the key  a connection is established with the ŠKODABreakdown Service. At the same time, the vehicle sends information about the vehicle condition and the vehicle position.

Requirements

- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to  Maximum privacy .

To send information about the position of the vehicle, the protection level of personal data must be set to  Share my position .

Operation



- › Press the  button.

Service schedules

Usage

If the vehicle detects that a service visit is necessary, it will automatically send this information to the service partner of your choice.

The service partner will then contact you and schedule the service visit with you.

Requirements

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions:

- ✓ The service partner is chosen on the ŠKODA Connect Portal website or in the ŠKODA Connect application.
- ✓ The vehicle type, vehicle equipment and Infotainment type are supported.
- ✓ The level of protection of personal data is not set to  *Maximum privacy*.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

- ▶ Trip overviews
- ▶ Notification of the alarm triggering
- ▶ Localisation service notifications (e.g.location, area or speed notifications)
- ▶ Vehicle search, using horn and flashing signals
- ▶ Remote-controlled vehicle locking and unlocking
- ▶ Operation of the auxiliary heating

Requirements

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions:

- ✓ The vehicle type, vehicle equipment and Infotainment type are supported.
- ✓ The set protection level for personal data that enables the required data to be sent.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Vehicle status report

Usage

The vehicle health report function enables the vehicle status to be tracked online.

The service is in the ŠKODA Connect application is available.

The available vehicle data includes, for example, the distance travelled, selected warning messages or service inspection requirements.

Requirements

The service and the coupled functions are available depending on the following conditions:

- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are active.
- ✓ The set protection level for personal data that enables the required data to be sent.
- ✓ The ŠKODA Connect services are available.

Remote access to the vehicle

Usage

The service relating to remote access to the vehicle offers the possibility of remotely controlling certain vehicle functions and accessing vehicle information.

Available functions include, for example, the following:

Starting and driving

Starting with the key

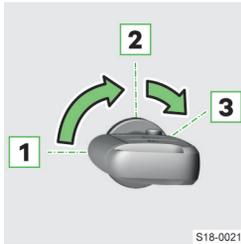
Notes on starting

⚠ DANGER

Danger of poisoning by exhaust gases!

- ▶ Do not run the engine in an enclosed space.

Positions of the key in the ignition lock



- 1 Ignition off
- 2 Ignition on
- 3 Start the engine

S18-0021

Starting the vehicle with manual transmission

- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- › Move the shift lever to the neutral position.
- › Keep the clutch pedal depressed.
- › Turn key to position **3**.
- › Release the key.

Starting the vehicle with automatic transmission

- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- › Keep the brake pedal depressed.
- › Move the selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
- › Turn key to position **3**.
- › Release the key.

I In vehicles with diesel engines, the warning light lights up after the ignition is switched - glow plug system on. The engine starts after .

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of unexpected vehicle movement!

- ▶ At temperatures below -10°C , start the vehicle with the selector lever in the **P** position.

Stopping the engine

- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- › Turn key to position **1**.

On vehicles with automatic transmission, the key can only be removed when the selector lever is in the **P** position.

⚠ WARNING

Steering lock hazard!

- ▶ During a journey with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of engine overheating!

- ▶ Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute.

Start at the push of a button

Notes on starting

⚠ DANGER

Danger of poisoning by exhaust gases!

- ▶ Do not run the engine in an enclosed space.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The vehicle key is located in the vehicle interior.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of key loss, possibly of key damage!

The system can detect the key even if it has been forgotten on the vehicle roof.

- ▶ Always keep the key with you.

Switching the ignition on and off



- › Press the starter button.

Starting the vehicle with manual transmission

- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- › Move the shift lever to the neutral position.
- › Keep the clutch pedal depressed.
- › Press the starter button.

Starting the vehicle with automatic transmission

- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- › Keep the brake pedal depressed.
- › Move the selector lever to position **P** or **N**.
- › Press the starter button.

I In vehicles with diesel engines, the warning light lights up after the ignition is switched - glow plug system on. The engine starts after .

⚠ CAUTION

Danger of unexpected vehicle movement!

- ▶ At temperatures below -10°C , start the vehicle with the selector lever in the **P** position.

Stopping the engine

- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- › Press the starter button.

⚠ WARNING

Steering lock hazard!

- ▶ During a journey with the engine stopped, the ignition must always be switched on.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of engine overheating!

- ▶ Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey after the engine has been running at high loads. Leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute.

Starting issues

Troubleshooting

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of engine damage!

- ▶ Do not start the vehicle by towing.

The engine does not start

- ▶ Switch off the ignition.
- ▶ Wait 30 seconds and repeat the starting procedure.
- ▶ If the engine does not start, use the jump start cables with the 12 volt vehicle battery of another vehicle > page 157 or seek the help of a specialist garage.

The engine does not start, the display shows a message regarding the immobilizer

- ▶ Use the other vehicle key.
- ▶ If the engine does not start, seek the help of a specialist garage.

The key cannot be turned in the ignition

- ▶ Move the steering wheel back and forth while turning the key.

Starting is not possible with the starter button, the system did not detect the key

 illuminates



- ▶ Press the starter button with the key.
- ▶ If the engine does not start, seek the help of a specialist garage.

I The key might not be detected if the battery in the key is nearly discharged or the signal is faulty.

The engine cannot be turned off with the starter button

- ▶ Hold the starter button or press twice.

The radiator fan keeps running even after the engine has stopped

The radiator fan can continue to run for approximately 10 minutes after the engine is stopped. This is not a defect.

The engine makes noises after the cold start

The increased running noise is due to the briefly increased engine speed. This is not a defect.

START STOP

Usage

The START-STOPP system reduces polluting emissions and the CO₂ emissions and saves fuel.

Functionality

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops, it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

Vehicle with manual transmission

A system-related engine switch-off occurs when stopping, when switching the gear lever into the neutral position, and when releasing the clutch pedal.

A system-related engine start occurs when the clutch pedal is pressed down.

Vehicle with automatic transmission

A system-related engine switch-off occurs when the brake pedal is actuated and the engine is stopped.

A system-related engine start takes place after releasing the brake pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

 - Engine is switched off via the START-STOPP system

 - Engine is not switched off via the START-STOPP system due to operating conditions that are not met

Display of detailed information in the infotainment screen

CAR >  > Vehicle status

Or:

MENU >  >  > Vehicle status

Operating conditions

Some conditions are systemic and can neither be influenced nor recognised. Therefore, the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The driver must fulfil the following conditions.

- ✓ The driver's door is closed.
- ✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- ✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km/h after the last stop.

Settings

Automatic activation

- ▶ Upon start-up of the engine.
- ▶ By selecting the driving mode Eco » page 128, *Operation*.

Deactivate/activate system

- › Press the  button.

When the system is deactivated, the symbol illuminates in the button .

If a system-related engine switch-off occurs and the system is deactivated, the engine will start.

Troubleshooting

The engine does not switch off when stopping, or it starts before starting up

The system has detected that the engine is running.

Manual gearbox

Operation

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of engine damage!

- ▶ Shift into higher gear before reaching the red area of the rev counter scale.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of gearbox damage!

- ▶ Depress the clutch pedal all the way down.
- ▶ If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever.

Engaging reverse gear

- › Stop the vehicle.
- › Depress the clutch pedal completely.
- › Move the shift lever to the neutral position.
- › Push the gearshift lever down.
- › Set this completely to the left.
- › Wait briefly.
- › Engage reverse gear.

Automatic gearbox

Lever positions



P Parked vehicle
The drive wheels are locked.

P Only set the position when the vehicle is stationary.

R Reverse gear

R Only set the position when the vehicle is stationary.

N Neutral

There is no transmission of engine power to the wheels.

D/S Forward drive / sports program

The gear is changed automatically.

In **S** mode, the gear is changed at higher speeds than in **D** mode.

▽ **Choose between D and S (spring-loaded position)**

Moving the selector lever out of the P or N position

 lights up - the selector lever is locked



- › Press the brake pedal, and at the same time, press the button in the selector lever.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the stationary vehicle rolling away automatically!

- ▶ When the selector lever is in the **D/S** position, **R** position or in manual shift mode, secure the vehicle with the brake.

Operation

Starting up

- › Keep the brake pedal depressed.
- › Start the engine.
- › Press the button in the selector lever and set it to the desired position.
- › Release the brake pedal and press the accelerator pedal lightly.

Speeding up while driving (kick-down)

- › Fully depress the accelerator.

Stopping temporarily (e.g. at a junction)

- › Leave the selector lever in the **D/S** position and secure the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Stopping

- › Keep the brake pedal depressed.
- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- › Press the button in the selector lever and set it to the **P** position.
- › Turn off the engine.

Driving in neutral

If the system detects that no gear is engaged while driving, it automatically switches to neutral position.

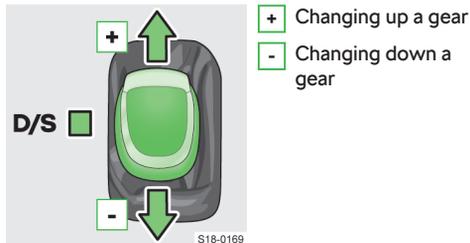
☞ will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

Requirements for driving in neutral position

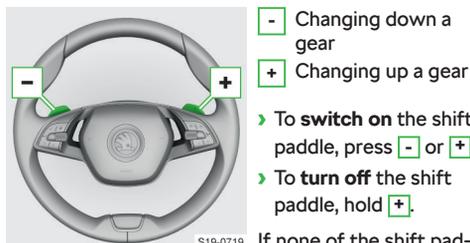
- ✓ **D** mode is chosen.
- ✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is pressed.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is 20-130 km/h.
- ✓ There is no device connected to the trailer socket.

Manually switching gear with the selector lever

- › To **turn on**, put the selector lever in the **D/S** position to the right (to the left for right-hand drive vehicles).
- › To **turn off**, put the selector lever back in the **D/S** position.



- + Changing up a gear
- Changing down a gear

Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel

- Changing down a gear
- + Changing up a gear
- › To **switch on** the shift paddle, press **-** or **+**.
- › To **turn off** the shift paddle, hold **+**.

If none of the shift paddles are pressed for a certain time, manual shift mode turns off automatically.

If the engine threatens to over-rev

- › The gearbox automatically changes to the next higher gear.
- › The transmission prevents changing to the next lower gear.

Troubleshooting**The selector lever cannot be moved out of position P in the normal way**

- › Manually unlock the selector lever » [page 128](#).

Gearbox overheated

 illuminates together with 

or

 illuminates together with 
Message regarding the gearbox overheating

- › You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.

 illuminates together with 

or

 illuminates together with 
Message regarding the gearbox overheating

- › Stop driving! Stop the vehicle and stop the engine.
- › After the indicator light goes out, your journey can continue.
- › If the warning light does not go out, stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Gearbox impaired

 illuminates together with 

or

 illuminates together with 
Message regarding the gearbox in emergency mode

- › You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution.
- › Immediately seek the help of a specialist garage.

 illuminates together with 

or

 illuminates together with 
Message regarding a gearbox fault

- › Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Starting up a vehicle that is stuck

- › Adjust the selector lever between **D/S** and **R**. The vehicle will then start to rock and be easier to free.

Manual release of automatic gearbox

- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.



- › Insert a flat-head screwdriver or push a similar tool into the gap in the area of arrow **A**.
- › Carefully loosen and lift the quadrant cover.
- › Push the foam insert away until the yellow release lever is visible.



- › Press with the vehicle key on the release lever, and at the same time, press the key in the selector lever.
- › Put the selector lever in **N** position.

Vehicle driving mode

Usage

The driving mode offers the possibility of adapting the driving behaviour to the desired driving style.

Overview

Information about the selected driving mode is displayed in the status bar in the Infotainment screen as well as in the digital instrument cluster.

Eco mode

Eco mode is suitable for a relaxed style of driving and helps to save fuel.

Normal mode

The Normal mode is suitable for a conventional driving.

Sport mode

The Sport mode is suitable for a sporty driving.

Individual mode

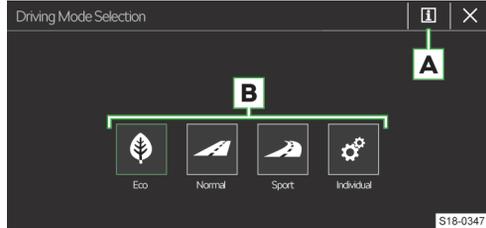
The Individual mode allows the individual configuration of certain vehicle systems.

Operation

Select driving mode

- › Press the  button.

In the Infotainment, a driving mode menu appears.



- A** Information on the system settings of the currently selected mode/system settings for the selected Individual mode

- B** Driving mode menu

- › Tap the relevant function surface **B**.

Or:

- › Press the  button again.

I After switching on the ignition, Normal mode is automatically selected.

Troubleshooting

Shock absorber Sport Chassis Preset faulty

 illuminates together with 

or

 illuminates together with 

- › Drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Economical driving style

Tips for economical driving and evaluation of driving economy

Tips for economical driving

- ▶ Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
- ▶ Follow the gear recommendation in the display of the instrument cluster.
- ▶ Avoid full acceleration and too high speeds.
- ▶ Avoid engine idling during longer periods of stationary time.
- ▶ Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine starts.
- ▶ Observe the prescribed tyre pressure » [page 166](#).
- ▶ Remove unnecessary ballast.

- ▶ Remove the roof rack when it is not needed.
- ▶ Switch on electric consumers only for as long as necessary.
- ▶ Do not leave the windows open while driving.

Consumption-friendly driving

In the following situations, a small reduction in fuel consumption occurs.  lights up in the instrument cluster.

- ▶ Active cylinder management has temporarily disabled some cylinders in the engine (applies to certain engine types).
- ▶ A vehicle with automatic transmission rolls in neutral position.

Towing a trailer

What you should be mindful of

WARNING

When driving with a trailer, special care is required!

NOTICE

With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Recommendations for using a trailer

- ▶ Adjust the tyre pressure on the vehicle for full load.
- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum permissible total weight of the vehicle and the combination weight specified in the technical vehicle documentation (e.g. in the vehicle registration documentation, in the COC document) and on the type plate.

- ▶ For trailer operation, consider the current load condition of the vehicle as well as the distribution of the load in the trailer. The coupled trailer increases the rear axle load and can therefore reduce the payload.
- ▶ Adjust the headlight range of the headlights according to the load status of the vehicle. The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users.
- ▶ A speed of **100 km/h** should not be exceeded.
- ▶ Reduce the speed by releasing the accelerator pedal as soon as a pendulum movement of the trailer is noticeable. Never attempt to stop the trailer from swaying by accelerating.
- ▶ If the traffic area behind the trailer can not be viewed, install additional exterior mirrors.
- ▶ Apply the brakes in good time. If the trailer is fitted with a trailer brake, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.
- ▶ Select a lower gear before descending to also use the braking force of the engine.

Distribution of the load over the vehicle and trailer combination

- ▶ Secure heavy objects against slipping, as close to the trailer axle as possible.
- ▶ Transport small and light objects in the luggage compartment.

Permitted trailer loads

The details in the technical vehicle documentation take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual.

WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Do not exceed the permissible trailer load.

Engine type	Gearbox	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg) ^{a)}	Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
1.0 l/66 kW TSI G-TEC	Manual gearbox	-	-
1.0 l/70 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1150	600/610 ^{b)}
1.0 l/81 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1200	610
	DSG ^{c)}	1200	620
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1200	610
	DSG ^{c)}	1200	620
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1250	630
	DSG ^{c)}	1250	630
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	Manual gearbox	1150	600
	Automatic gearbox	1150	620
1.6 l/70 kW TDI CR	Manual gearbox	1250	660

Engine type	Gearbox	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg) ^{a)}	Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
1.6 l/85 kW TDI CR	Manual gearbox	1250	660
	DSG ^{c)}	1250	680

a) With gradients up to 12%.
 b) Applies to cars with the EU6AP emission standard.
 c) Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

Towing eye and towing procedure

Towing lug

Removing the front cap



- › Press on the cap and remove it.

S19-0338

Removing the rear cap



- › Press on the cap and remove it.

S19-0339

Installing the towing eye



- › Screw in the towing eye.
- › Insert the wheel wrench or similar object through the towing eye.
- › Tighten the towing eye.

S18-0235

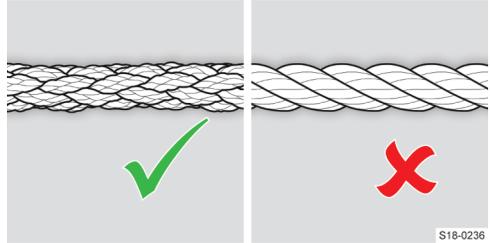
After the towing process

- › Unscrew the towing eye.
- › Insert the cover cap.

Towing the vehicle

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!

- ▶ The tow rope must not be twisted.
- ▶ When towing, drive at a speed of max. 50 km/h.



S18-0236

⚠ WARNING
Risk of accident!

- ▶ Use a braided synthetic fibre rope for towing. Do not use a twisted tow rope.

① NOTICE

- ▶ Always keep the tow rope taut during towing.
- ▶ Do not exceed a towing distance of 50 km.

① NOTICE

Danger of gearbox damage!

- ▶ If the gearbox no longer contains any oil, the vehicle must only be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or transported on a special breakdown vehicle.
- ▶ Vehicles with automatic transmission must not be towed without the ignition switched on or with the rear axle raised.

Where should the tow rope or the tow bar be secured?

- ▶ At the front towing eye
- ▶ At the rear towing eye
- ▶ On the ball bar of the factory-installed towing hitch

[i] For vehicles with factory-fitted towing device, at the back there is no mount for a screw-in towing eye.

Information for the driver of the towing vehicle

- › Drive slowly and smoothly.
- › Only accelerate once the rope is taut.

Information for the driver of the towed vehicle

- › Move the shift lever to the neutral position or the selector lever to the **N** position.

- › If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition!

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

When the ignition is switched off, the brake booster and the power steering do not work. In addition, there is a risk that the steering lock will engage.

- ▶ If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition!

Brakes

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Problems and faults with the brake system can extend the braking distance of the vehicle!

⚠ DANGER

Danger of a functional restriction of the brake booster!

- ▶ When braking in a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, depress the clutch pedal.

⚠ DANGER

Danger of the brakes overheating!

- ▶ Do not depress the brake pedal unless braking is required.
- ▶ If the original front spoiler is damaged, ensure the air supply to the front brakes is guaranteed.

Inspecting the brake fluid level

Test conditions

- ✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface
- ✓ The engine is off

Checking



The fill level must be within the marked range.

- › If the level is below the mark **MIN**, do not continue.
- › Do not refill liquid.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

If the brake fluid level is too low, this will be indicated in the instrument cluster by the illumination of  is displayed in the status bar. Nevertheless, we recommend checking the brake fluid level regularly directly at the reservoir.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of brake failure!

If the fluid level falls significantly within a short time or drops below the mark **MIN**, the brake system may have become leaky.

- ▶ Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Specification

The brake fluid must comply with standard VW 501 14. This standard complies with the requirements of the FMVSS 116 DOT4 standard.

Changing

Have the brake fluid replaced by a specialist garage.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of brake failure!

If the brake fluid change date is exceeded, heavy braking may cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system.

Troubleshooting

Brake fluid level is too low



illuminates

- › Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Brake system and anti-lock braking system faulty



illuminates together with 

- › Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Reduced braking effect

Damp, frozen, salt-affected or corroded brakes can impair the braking effect.

- › Clean the brakes by braking several times if traffic conditions allow it.

When the engine is stopped, the brake booster does not work

- › Depress the brake pedal more forcefully.

Handbrake

service

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

An insufficiently released parking brake will impair the function of the brake system.

- ▶ Fully release the parking brake before driving.

To back up



- › Pull the lever up to the stop position.

The parking brake  lights up.

To solve

- › Pull the lever up a little and push in the lock button.
- › Press and hold the lock button and pull the lever completely down.

Driver assist systems

Braking and stabilising systems

Overview

Stabilisation control (ESC)

ESC helps to stabilize the vehicle in borderline situations (e.g. when the vehicle starts to skid). ESC brakes the individual wheels to maintain the direction of travel.



flashes - ESC is engaged

Traction control (TCS)

ASR helps to stabilize the vehicle when accelerating or driving on low-grip roads. ASR reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels when the wheels spin.



flashes - ASR is engaged

Antilock braking system (ABS)

ABS helps maintain control of the vehicle during emergency braking. An ABS intervention is noticeable by pulsating movements of the brake pedal.

Motor Slip Regulation (MSR)

MSR helps to maintain control of the vehicle in the event of a sudden reduction in speed, e.g. on icy roads. If the drive wheels lock, MSR increases the engine speed. This reduces the braking effect of the engine and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

EDL helps to stabilize the vehicle when driving on road surfaces with different grip under the individual wheels. EDL brakes a spinning wheel and transmits power to a different drive wheel.

Electronic Differential Lock (XDL+)

XDL + helps to stabilize the vehicle during fast cornering by braking the inside wheel of the driven axle.

Active steering assistance (DSR)

In difficult situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle.

Hill Hold Control

Hill Hold Control helps when starting off on uphill gradients by braking the vehicle for about 2 seconds after the brake pedal is released.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The gradient is at least 5%.
- ✓ The driver's door is closed.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)

MCB helps to decelerate and stabilize the vehicle after a collision with an obstacle. This reduces the risk of further collisions.

Operating conditions

- ✓ There has been a frontal, side and rear collision of a certain severity.
- ✓ The impact speed was greater than 10 km/h.
- ✓ The brakes, ESC and other required systems remained functional after the impact.
- ✓ The accelerator pedal is not pressed.

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

TSA helps to stabilize the trailer. As the trailer begins to lurch, TSA stabilizes the trailer by slowing down the individual vehicle wheels.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The hitch was supplied from the factory or purchased from ŠKODA Genuine Accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is connected to the trailer socket.
- ✓ ASR activated.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.

Settings**Deactivating/activating ASR**

In Infotainment, in the following menu:

CAR >  > 

Or:

MENU >  >  > 

When deactivated,  lights up in the instrument cluster.

 goes out on renewed activation.

Deactivating the ASR may be helpful in the following situations:

- ▶ Driving with snow chains
- ▶ Driving in deep snow or on very loose ground
- ▶ Starting up a vehicle that is stuck

Troubleshooting**ESC or ASR faulty/deactivated by the system**

 illuminates

› Stop the engine and start again.

- › If the indicator light does not go out after covering a short distance, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ABS faulty

 illuminates

› You may continue driving, exercising appropriate caution. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Brake system and anti-lock braking system faulty

 illuminates together with 

› Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Front Assist**Functionality**

Front Assist monitors the distance to the vehicle ahead and points out when the safety distance is exceeded. In borderline situations, it helps to avoid a collision by braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

 illuminates - safety distance too small



or  illuminates - warning in case of collision

Automatic braking if there is a risk of a collision

If there is a risk of a collision, the following symbol is illuminated as a warning  or  from the isolation box. If you do not respond to the warning, the vehicle will slow down.

At a driving speed of up to 30 km / h, the vehicle is braked without prior warning.

Automatic braking can be stopped by pressing the accelerator pedal or by a steering intervention.

With automatic braking, the pressure in the brake system increases. The brake pedal cannot be operated by using the pedal as normal.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

Front Assist does not respond to crossing or oncoming vehicles.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The parking aid is activated.
- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 5 km/h.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

- ▶ About 30 seconds after starting ( lights up in the instrument cluster)
- ▶ When driving around a sharp bend
- ▶ During an ESC intervention

Settings**Automatic activation**

Front Assist is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation in the instrument cluster

- › Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- › Select *Front Assist* .

Activation/deactivation in Infotainment

In the menu **MENU** > > .

Show system deactivation in the display of the instrument cluster



illuminates together with

or



illuminates together with

Deactivate Front Assist when handling the vehicle on a truck, a car ferry etc.

Troubleshooting

Front Assist is not available



illuminates together with

Or:



illuminates together with

- › Clean the front radar sensor.
- › Stop the engine and start again.
- › If Front Assist is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.
- › If the brake lights are working and Front Assist is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

There was an unfounded warning or system intervention

- › Clean the front radar sensor.
- › If the system is not working properly, disable Front Assist and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Pedestrian detection system

Functionality

Pedestrian recognition helps to prevent a collision with crossing or lengthwise moving pedestrians by enabling automatic braking interventions.

Status display in the instrument cluster display



or lights up - Danger of collision

Risk of collision in a speed range of 5-30 km/h

The system triggers automatic braking.

Risk of collision in a speed range of 30-60 km/h

The system warns of a collision hazard first. If the driver does not respond, the vehicle is automatically braked.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Front Assist is deactivated.
- ✓ The vehicle speed is 5-60 km/h.

Speed limiter

Functionality

The speed limiter controls the maximum driving speed according to the set speed limit.

If the limit is exceeded when driving downhill, brake the vehicle with the brake pedal.

Status display in the instrument cluster display



illuminates - the cruise control is activated.

flashing - the set limit is exceeded

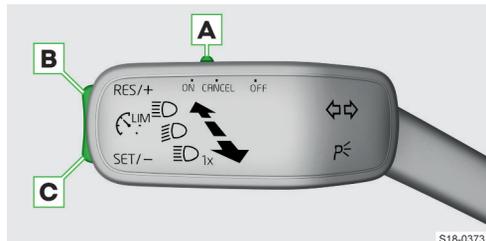
When the regulation starts highlighted and the set limit is displayed.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 30 km/h.

Operation

Variant without cruise control

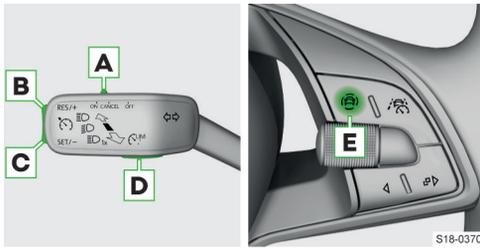


S18-0373

- A** **ON** Activate limiter (control inactive)
OFF Deactivate limiter
CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)
- B** **RES/+** Resume control¹⁾ / Increase limit
- C** **SET/-** Start control with current speed / Reduce limit

¹⁾ If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

Variant with cruise control

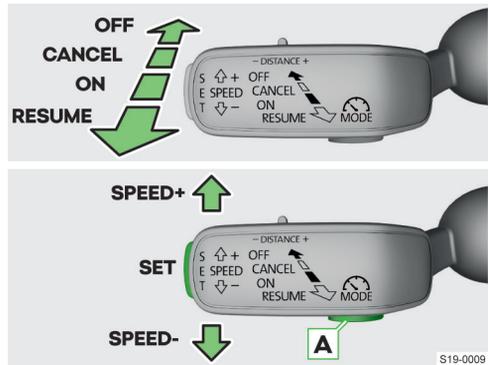


- A** **ON** Activate cruise control (condition for the subsequent activation of the limiter).
To activate the speed limiter, press button **D** or **E**.
- OFF** Deactivate limiter
- CANCEL** Interrupt control (sprung position)
- B** **RES/+** Resume control¹⁾ / Increase limit
- C** **SET/-** Start control with current speed / Reduce limit
- D** Depending on the equipment:
 - ☺ Switch between cruise control and speed limiter
 - Or:
 - ⊕ Show menu of assist systems - Possibility of switching between cruise control and speed limiter
 Switching to cruise control interrupts the control.
- E** Show menu of assist systems - Possibility of switching between cruise control and speed limiter
Switching to cruise control interrupts the control.

Adjusting the speed limit with the buttons **B and **C****

- By pressing** in steps of 1 km/h.
- By holding** in steps of 10 km/h.

Variant with ACC



- ON** Activate ACC (condition for the subsequent activation of the limiter). To activate the limiter, press button **A**.
- RESUME** Resume control ¹⁾ / Increase limit in steps of 1 km/h (sprung position)
- CANCEL** Stop control (sprung position)
- OFF** Deactivate the limiter
- SPEED+** Increase limit in steps of 10 km/h
- SPEED-** Decrease limit in steps of 10 km/h
- SET** Start control/Reduce limit in steps of 1 km/h
- A** Change between ACC and speed limiter (by switching to cruise control, control is interrupted)

Limit exceeded

➤ **Fully depress** the accelerator.

Control will continue as soon as the vehicle has decelerated to below the set limit.

Troubleshooting

Speed limiter faulty

LIM illuminates

➤ Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Cruise control system

Functionality

The cruise control system maintains the set speed without the accelerator pedal having to be operated. This, however, is only possible to the extent permitted by the engine output and braking power of the vehicle.

¹⁾ If no speed limit is set, the current speed is set as the speed limit.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of the cruise control system starting unintentionally!

- ▶ Deactivate cruise control after use.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

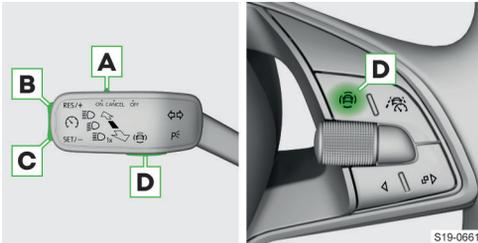
-  illuminated - the cruise control system is activated
-  illuminated - cruise control is active
When cruise control starts, the set speed is displayed.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 20 km/h.

Operation

Operating with the lever



- A** **ON** Activate cruise control (cruise control deactivated)
OFF Deactivate cruise control
CANCEL Interrupt control (sprung position)
- B** **RES/+** Resume cruise control¹⁾/Increase speed
- C** **SET/-** Start control with current speed/Reduce limit
- D**  Show menu of assist systems - Possibility of switching between cruise control and speed limiter

Accelerate temporarily

- › Depress the accelerator pedal.

Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Interrupting cruise control

- ▶ After pressing the brake pedal
- ▶ After an ESC intervention

Troubleshooting

Cruise control system faulty

-  illuminates
› Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Functionality

ACC control

ACC maintains the set speed. When your vehicle approaches the vehicle in front, ACC will automatically start to maintain the set distance to this vehicle.

Maintaining the set speed and the distance will hereinafter be referred to as **Control**.

⚠ WARNING

ACC does not respond to stationary objects or to crossing or oncoming objects.

-  ACC is intended primarily for use on motorways.

Speed range

Depending on the equipment, ACC allows a speed setting in the range of 30-160 or 30-210 km/h.

If control is started at a speed of less than 30 km/h on vehicles with an automatic transmission, the speed is automatically increased to 30 km/h or controlled according to the speed of the vehicle ahead.

Distance level

The distance to the vehicle ahead can be adjusted to five different levels.

⚠ WARNING

- ▶ Maintain a minimum distance in accordance with the country-specific legal regulations.

Automatic stop and start

A vehicle with an automatic transmission can be decelerated to a stop using the ACC and start moving again. In the event of a long stop, a message will appear in the display, indicating that you must operate the brake pedal.

- › Keep the brake pedal depressed until the vehicle in front starts moving.

If the brake pedal is not depressed, control is interrupted.

Overtaking

If your vehicle changes to the fast lane and no vehicle is detected in front, ACC accelerates up to the set speed.

Status display in the instrument cluster display

-  illuminates - ACC is activated

¹⁾ If no speed is set, the current speed is adopted.

Depending on the equipment:

 illuminates - Control is active

or

 illuminates together with  - Control is active

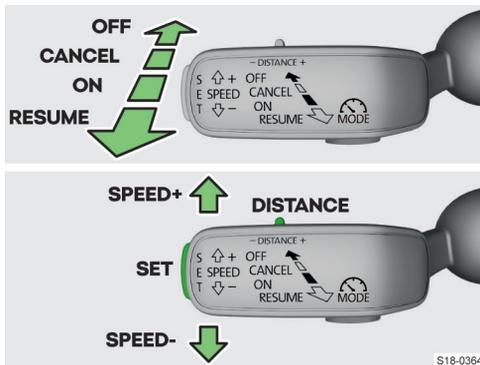
When the control starts, the set speed is displayed.

 illuminates - ACC does not decelerate sufficiently

› Depress the brake pedal.

Operation

Operating with the lever



- ON** Activate ACC (control inactive)
- RESUME** Start or resume control/Increase speed in steps of 1 km/h (sprung position)
- CANCEL** Stop control (sprung position)
- OFF** Deactivate ACC
- SPEED+** Increase speed in steps of 10 km/h
- SPEED-** Reduce speed in steps of 10 km/h
- DISTANCE** Set distance level
- SET** Start control/Reduce speed in steps of 1 km/h

Starting control with the current speed

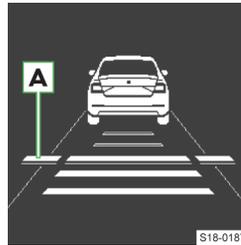
› Tap on **SET**.

Or:

› If no speed is saved, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

Set distance level

› Move the **DISTANCE** switch to the sprung position - or +.



Line **A** appears in the display, indicating the change in distance.

› Use the **DISTANCE** switch to set the desired distance level.

For temporary acceleration

› Depress the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle accelerates and control is temporarily interrupted. Upon releasing the accelerator, control is resumed.

Interrupting cruise control

- ▶ After pressing the brake pedal while driving
- ▶ By operating the clutch pedal for a long time
- ▶ After an ESC intervention
- ▶ After deactivation of the ASR

Resuming control

› If a speed is stored, move the lever to the sprung position **RESUME**.

The vehicle is controlled at the set speed. The set speed is shown in the instrument cluster display.

Function restriction

Do not use the ACC in the following cases:

- ▶ The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
- ▶ The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
- ▶ When the driving lane is too narrow.
- ▶ The vehicle drives through a construction site.

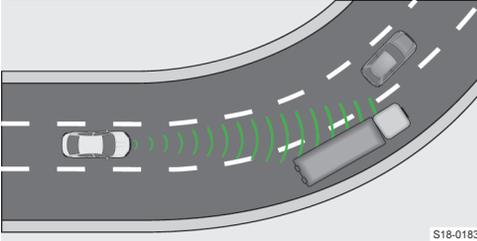
⚠ WARNING

▶ Be particularly attentive and alert in the following situations.

Regulation according to the vehicle in the adjacent lane

If your vehicle is moving faster than the vehicle in the next lane on the driver's side, at a speed of more than 80 km/h, this may cause your vehicle to be controlled according to that vehicle.

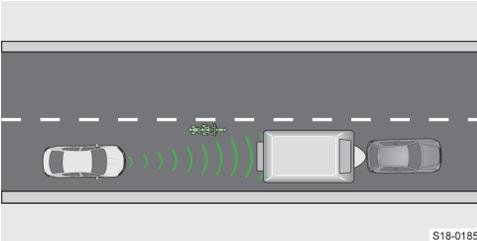
When cornering



S18-0183

When cornering, a vehicle in the next lane may enter the detected area. Your vehicle will be controlled according to this vehicle.

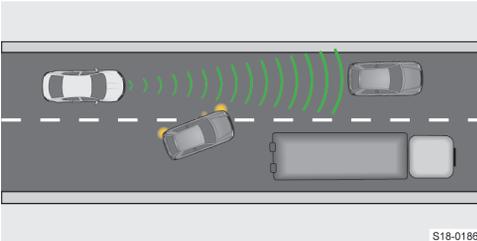
Narrow or staggered vehicle



S18-0185

ACC detects a narrow or staggered vehicle only when it is in the area covered by the radar.

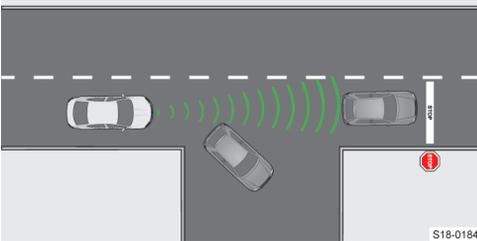
Lane change by another vehicle



S18-0186

A vehicle that changes to the lane a short distance away may not be recognized by the ACC in time.

Stationary vehicle



S18-0184

If a vehicle in front turns and there is a stationary vehicle in front of this vehicle, the ACC must not respond to the stationary vehicle.

Vehicles with special load or special bodies

A load or superstructure that protrudes outside the vehicle might not be detected by the ACC.

Settings

Activation / deactivation and setting

In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** › › .



- ▶ *Driving programme:* - Setting the vehicle acceleration when the ACC is switched on (this setting is made for vehicles with driving mode selection » page 128)
- ▶ *Last distance selected:* - Switch on/off the last distance selected
- ▶ *Distance:* - Setting the distance to vehicles in front

Troubleshooting

ACC not available

illuminates together with

or

illuminates together with

- › Stop the engine and start again.
- › If ACC is still unavailable, check the brake lights on the vehicle or on the attached trailer.
- › If the brake lights are working and ACC is still unavailable, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Lane Assist

Usage

Lane Assist helps to keep the vehicle within the lane. It is based on the boundaries of a lane. These may include lane markings, road edges or objects such as curbs or possibly traffic cones.

The system is intended primarily for use on highways.

Functionality

As the vehicle approaches a lane marking, the system executes a steering movement in the opposite direction from the lane marking. The steering intervention can be overridden manually.

No system intervention occurs when changing lane with the turn signal on.

Status display in the instrument cluster display



lights up - System is activated and ready to intervene



lights up - System is activated and ready to intervene



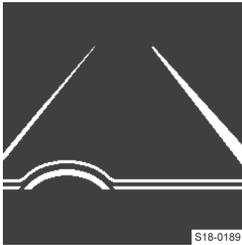
lights up - System intervenes



lights up - System intervenes

Display

Display example in black and white display.



Lane boundary highlighted on the right: system intervenes on the right when approaching the lane marking.

In the coloured display, the lines are highlighted in colour.

Warning through steering wheel vibrations

The steering wheel vibrations are triggered in the following situations:

- ▶ The vehicle crosses the boundary line without the indicator light switched on.
- ▶ The system is not able to keep the vehicle within the lane.
- ▶ Correct the steering movement in the event of vibrations.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 60 km/h.
- ✓ The lane markings are clearly visible.

Function restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- ▶ The field of view of the sensor is limited by a dirty screen or an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- ▶ If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- ▶ The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
- ▶ The vehicle is travelling on a sloping road or in ruts.
- ▶ When the driving lane is too narrow.
- ▶ The vehicle drives through a construction site.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of incorrect steering intervention!
Certain objects or markings on the road may be erroneously recognized as lane markings.

- ▶ Always keep your hands on the steering wheel and be prepared to override the steering intervention.

Settings

Automatic activation

Lane Assist is **always** automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Activation/deactivation in the instrument cluster

- ▶ Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- ▶ Select Lane Assist .

Activation/deactivation in Infotainment

In the menu MENU > > .

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

- ▶ Clean the windscreen in the sensor area.
- ▶ Stop the engine and restart again after a short time.
- ▶ If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Lane change assist system Side Assist

Usage

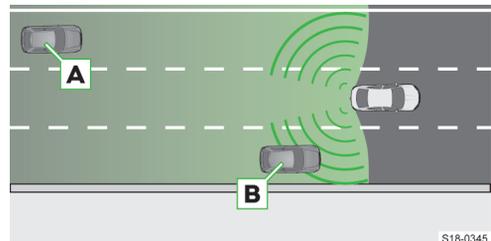
The system uses optical signals in the exterior mirror to alert the driver to vehicles that could be dangerous when changing lanes.

Functionality

The system monitors the area both beside and behind the vehicle.

The system warns of an approaching vehicle through the indicator light in the exterior mirror cover on the vehicle side, where the vehicle is recognized.

Driving situations in which a system warning occurs



Your vehicle is being overtaken by vehicle **A**. The faster vehicle **A** approaches, the sooner the warning is given by the indicator light.

Vehicle **B** is overtaken by your vehicle at a speed that is faster by max. 10 km/h. If the speed is higher during the overtaking process, no warning will be provided by the indicator light.

Indicator light

■ **illuminates** - There is another vehicle behind your vehicle

■ **flashing** - There is another vehicle behind your vehicle, and the turn signal on the same side is switched on

For vehicles with Lane Assist, the indicator light will also flash if your vehicle crosses the lane markings in the direction of the approaching vehicle. The system will trigger a steering wheel vibration in this case.

For this, Lane Assist must be activated and the lane marking between the vehicles must be detected.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

The system cannot detect lane width. For this reason, it may, for example, draw attention to a vehicle in a distant lane in the following cases:

- ▶ The vehicle is driving on a road with narrow lanes or on the lane edge.
- ▶ The vehicle is taking a turn.

The system can draw attention to objects along the road, such as high guard rails or noise barriers.

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of a vehicle, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

- ▶ If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- ▶ A very fast approaching vehicle.
- ▶ The vehicle is driving through a sharp bend or a roundabout.

Settings

In the instrument cluster display

In the menu *Assist systems*.

In Infotainment

In the menu **MENU** > > .

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

- › Stop the engine and start again.
- › If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Traffic sign recognition

Usage

The road sign recognition shows road signs in the display of the instrument cluster. This also indicates exceeding the speed limit.

⚠ WARNING

Road signs on the road always have priority over the road signs shown on the display.

Functionality

Displayed road signs

- ▶ Speed limits
- ▶ Overtaking prohibited
- ▶ Driving bans – one-way traffic
- ▶ Additional characters, e.g. speed limit in wet conditions

Towing a trailer

If a trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket, trailer-relevant road signs are also displayed.

Driving on roads without speed limits

If you are on a road with no speed limits, the road signs will appear in the display.

Example of road sign display



Example of additional characters



Example of several simultaneously recognised road signs.

I At the same time, a red display regarding the speed limit appears in the speedometer.

Speed units

The speed indications in the road signs shown refer to the speed units that are common in the country.

For example, the display may refer to 30 km/h or 30 mph depending on the country.

Restriction

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- ▶ The sensor is blinded by the sun or oncoming traffic.
- ▶ The field of view of the sensor is limited by an obstacle or a preceding vehicle.
- ▶ If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- ▶ The vehicle is moving at high speed.
- ▶ The road signs are hidden, damaged, or are non-standard.
- ▶ The road signs are attached to flashing neon signs.
- ▶ The navigation map documents are not up-to-date or not available.

Settings

Activation / deactivation and setting

In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** >  > .

- *Traffic Sign Recognition*
 - ▶ *Show in instrument cluster* - Activation/deactivation of the additional road signs in the display of the instrument cluster
 - ▶ *Speed warning:* - Configures a warning when the speed limit is exceeded
 - ▶ *Warning at over* - Increases the speed limit for the warning when exceeding the permitted speed
- *Trailer detection*
 - ▶ *Show road signs relevant to trailers* Activation/deactivation of the display of road signs relevant to trailers
 - ▶ *Use for route calculation* - Activation/deactivation taking trailers in account for route calculation in navigation
 - ▶ *Tap on maximum speed for trailers* - Setting the speed limits for trailer operation

Crew Protect Assist proactive occupant protection

Usage

The system of proactive occupant protection triggers measures to protect vehicle occupants in dangerous situations.

Functionality

If the system evaluates the situation as critical, it triggers the following safety measures:

- ▶ Open windows are closed except for a small gap.
- ▶ The front seat belts are tightened on the body.

 The system response depends on the selected driving mode.

Risk of frontal impact

Applies to vehicles with the Front Assist system.

The system triggers safety measures when it detects the impending danger of a frontal impact.

Function restriction

The function may be restricted or unavailable in the following cases:

- ▶ When deactivated in the infotainment in the menu **MENU** >  > 
- ▶ When deactivating the ASR or activating the ESC Sport
- ▶ When reversing
- ▶ If there is a malfunction in the ESC, reversible seat belt or airbag system
- ▶ If there is a malfunction or limitation of the Front Assist system

Settings

Automatic activation

The system is automatically activated when the ignition is switched on.

Troubleshooting

Crew Protect Assist faulty

 illuminates together with  Message concerning unavailability or functional restriction

- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Driver Alert fatigue detection assistant

Functionality

Driver Alert evaluates the steering behaviour. If it detects fatigue in the driver, a break is recommended. In the display of the instrument cluster, the following symbol lights up  from the isolation box.

WARNING

There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Resetting the break recommendation

The break recommendation is reset in the following cases:

- ▶ The vehicle stops and the ignition is switched off
- ▶ The vehicle stops, the seat belt is removed and the driver's door is opened

- ▶ The vehicle stops for more than 15 minutes

I In some situations, the system may erroneously issue a break recommendation.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Driving speed between 60-200 km/h.

Settings

Activation/deactivation

In the Infotainment system, in the menu **MENU** ›  › .

Park Assist systems

Park Pilot parking aid

Functionality

If an obstacle is detected, the Infotainment will display a visible message and an audible signal will sound.

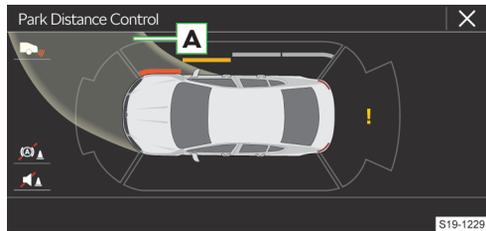
The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. At a distance of less than 30 cm from the obstacle, a continuous tone sounds.

If the driver does not respond to the warning, the system triggers automatic emergency braking at speeds below 8 km/h in order to reduce the impact.

Automatic braking can be activated and deactivated in the infotainment.

Display

The recorded areas vary according to the equipment.



A Route controlled at the current steering angle

 Acoustic signals on/off

 One-time deactivation/activation of automatic braking

 Change to the rear view camera display

! System fault

■ Obstacle at a distance of less than 30 cm

■ Obstacle at a distance of more than 30 cm

□ Obstacle outside the route

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is lower than 15 km/h.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Turn on/turn off

Switching on

- › Engage reverse gear.

Or:

- › Press the **P** button.

Automatic switch-on during forward travel

When approaching an obstacle at a speed of less than 10 km/h.

Automatic switch-on does not activate automatic braking.

Switching off

- › Disengage reverse gear.

Or:

- › Press the **P** button.

Automatic switch off

The driving speed is higher than 15 km/h.

Function restriction

In the following cases, the system does not have to issue a warning of an obstacle, or the warning may be issued incorrectly:

- › If the weather conditions are unfavourable.
- › The detected obstacles are moving.
- › Sensor signals are not reflected by the surface of the obstacles.
- › It is a small obstacle, e.g. a stone or a pillar.

Settings

The system settings are made in the infotainment system in the following menu:

CAR › › **P**

Or:

MENU › › › **P**

Troubleshooting

After switching on, an audible signal sounds for 3 seconds and there is no obstacle near the vehicle

- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching on, the symbol **P flashes in the button**

- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

After switching on, not all scanned areas are displayed on the Infotainment screen

- › Move the vehicle a few meters forwards or backwards.
- › If the scanned areas are still not displayed, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Rear view camera

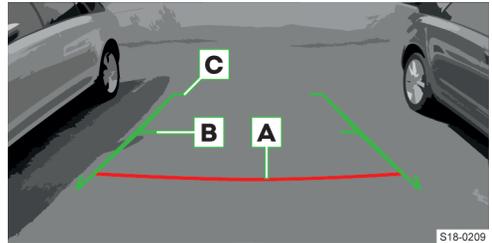
Functionality

When reversing, the area behind the vehicle is displayed in the Infotainment screen complete with orientation lines.

The camera is equipped with a cleaning system. Cleaning takes place automatically when the rear window is washed.

Orientation lines and functional surfaces

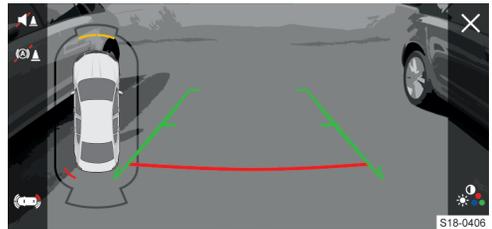
Orientation lines



- A** Distance about 40 cm
- B** Distance about 100 cm
- C** Distance about 200 cm

The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Function surfaces



- Brightness, contrast and colour settings of the screen
- Turns off the display of the area behind the vehicle
- Switching audible parking signals on/off
- One-time deactivation/activation of automatic braking
- Parking aid full screen view.

Operating conditions

- ✓ Boot lid closed

- ✓ Ignition on
- ✓ Driving speed less than 15 km/h

Operation

Switching on

- › Engage reverse gear.

Switching off

- › Disengage reverse gear.

Restriction

The camera image is distorted in contrast to the naked eye. The display may only be used to estimate the distance.

Some items may not be displayed properly on the screen. These include narrow columns, wire mesh fences, grids or road bumps.

Rear Traffic Alert

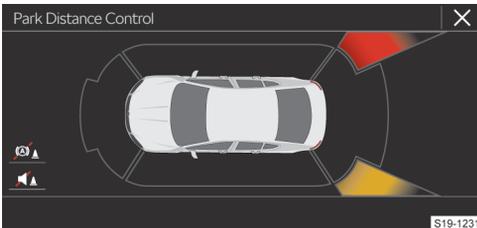
Functionality



When reversing, the Rear Traffic Alert warns of approaching vehicles. If the driver does not respond to the warning, the vehicle is braked automatically at a speed below 10 km/h.

Vehicle with Parking Aid

If an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle, a graphical warning is displayed in the Infotainment. At the same time, a continuous tone sounds.



- Vehicle in collision area - danger of collision!
- Approaching vehicle

Vehicle without Parking Aid

If an approaching vehicle is detected in the area behind your vehicle, the a warning is displayed in the instrument cluster display, indicating to the driver to

monitor the traffic behind. At the same time, an acoustic signal sounds.

Operating conditions

- ✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Function restriction

Manoeuvre Assist's functionality may be limited in unfavourable weather conditions.

Settings

Activation/deactivation in the instrument cluster display

In the menu *Assist systems*.

Activation/deactivation in Infotainment

In the following menu:

CAR > > **P**

Or:

MENU > > > **P**

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

- › Stop the engine and start again.
- › If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Park steering assistant

Usage

Park Assist helps drivers park in parallel and perpendicular parking places and to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

Functionality

The system looks for a parking space and only takes over the steering during the parking procedure or when leaving a parking place. The driver operates the pedals and the shift lever/gear selector.

The system displays information and notes on the instrument cluster display.

If the system detects a risk of collision, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

Operating conditions

- ✓ The driving speed is lower than 7 km/h.
- ✓ The ASR is activated and there is no intervention.
- ✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.
- ✓ No accessories are connected to the trailer socket.

Operation

Turn on/turn off

- › Press the **P** button.

When the system is switched on, the symbol lights up in the button **P**.

Select the lane side for the parking procedure

The system automatically searches for a suitable parking space on the passenger side.

- › Press the driver's side indicator to find a parking space on this side of the road.

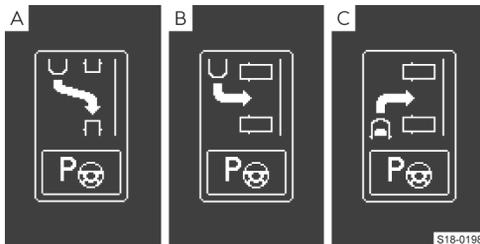
Operation while searching for a parking space

- › Drive past a number of parked vehicles at a distance of 0.5–1.5 m.
- › To search for a parking space across the road, drive slower than 20 km/h.
- › To search for a parking space along the road, drive slower than 40 km/h.

If the symbol \ominus (km/h) appears in the display, reduce the driving speed. If the system finds a parking space, the display will show the recommended parking mode.

Changing the parking mode

If a suitable parking space is found, the following Park modes can be shown in the display.



- ▣ A Park backwards longitudinally
- ▣ B Park backwards crosswise
- ▣ C Park forwards across

The parking mode can be changed by pressing the button **P**.

Press the button again **P** and the system is switched off.

- › To return to the original recommended parking mode, press the button **P** again.

Before the parking process

- › If a suitable parking space is found, stop and drive backwards or forwards as indicated by the arrow in the display.
- › When a steering intervention message is displayed, release the steering wheel. The steering operation is taken over by the system.

Parking operation

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- ▶ Do not reach between the steering wheel spokes during the parking manoeuvre.
- ▶ Only operate the pedals and the shift / selector lever.
- › Observe the area around the vehicle and drive backwards or forwards in accordance with the arrow in the display.
- › As soon as the symbol \ominus appears in the display and an audible signal sounds, stop the vehicle. The steering wheel is taken over accordingly. The symbol \ominus goes out.
- › Travel backwards or forwards in accordance with the arrow in the display.

As soon as the parking process is completed, the corresponding message is displayed and an audible signal sounds.

The parking procedure can be ended at any time by pressing the button **P**.

▣ When partially parked in a suitable transverse parking space forward, press button **P**. The parking process is completed by the system.

Exiting a parking space

- › Press the **P** button.

When the system is switched on, the symbol lights up in the button **P**.

- › Follow the instructions on the screen.

Automatic speed reduction

If a speed of 7 km/h is exceeded during the parking process, the system will reduce the speed.

Upon the speed being exceeded by 7 km/h a second time, the parking process is terminated.

Function restriction

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to use the Park Assist to initiate a parking manoeuvre. A message is shown on the instrument cluster display.

Do not use the Park Assist in the following cases:

- ▶ The vehicle is moving on unpaved or slippery surfaces.
- ▶ If snow chains or a spare wheel are mounted on the vehicle.
- ▶ If the system chooses an inappropriate parking space for parking.

Troubleshooting

Message regarding system unavailability

- › Stop the engine and start again.
- › If the system is still not available, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Incorrect resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space

The correct parking procedure depends on the size of the wheels. If other wheels approved by ŠKODA AUTO are fitted, have the system readjusted by a specialist garage.

Engine, exhaust system and fuel

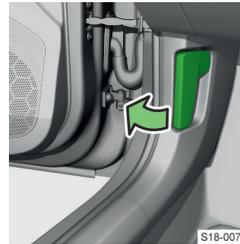
Bonnet

Opening the bonnet

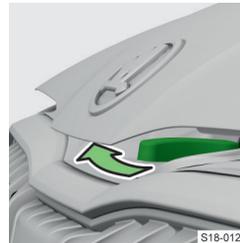
Before opening

- › Make sure the windscreen wiper arms are folded down onto the windscreen.
- › Keep everyone away from the engine compartment.

Opening



- › Pull the release lever underneath the dash panel.



- › Release the lock.



- › Open the bonnet.
- › Remove the bonnet stay from the holder and insert the end of the stay into the opening in the bonnet.

Closing

- › Lift the bonnet.
- › Unhook the bonnet stay and insert it into the holder.
- › Fold the bonnet down and release it with a distance of 30 cm remaining.
- › Check that the bonnet is closed.

① NOTICE

- ▶ Do not press down on an unclosed bonnet.
- ▶ Open and close the flap again.

Engine oil

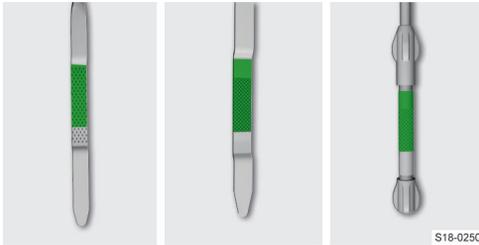
Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions

- ✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface
- ✓ The parked engine is warm

Checking the level

- › Wait a few minutes for the engine oil to flow back into the oil sump.
- › Remove the dipstick and wipe with a clean cloth.
- › Insert the dipstick as far as it will go and pull it out again.
- › Read the oil level and push the dipstick back in again.



The oil level must be within the marked range.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- ▶ The oil level must not be outside the marked range. If it is not possible to top up the engine oil or if the oil level is above the marked range, do not continue driving. Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.
- ▶ Do not use any oil additives.

Consumption

Depending on driving style and operating conditions, the engine consumes some oil, up to 0.5 l/1000 km. Consumption may be higher over the next 5000 km.

Refilling

- › Unscrew the cover of the engine oil filler opening.
- › Top up the oil to the correct specification in 0.5 litre portions.
- › Check the oil level.
- › Screw on the cover of the engine oil filler opening.

Specification

Ask a specialist garage for the correct engine oil specification for your vehicle.

If no oil of the correct specification is available, **max. 0.5 l** of oil with the following specifications may be used until the next oil change:

- ▶ **Petrol engines:** VW 504 00, VW 508 00, ACEA C3, ACEA C5

- ▶ **Diesel engines:** VW 507 00, VW 509 00, ACEA C3, API CJ-4

For vehicles without a particulate filter, VW 505 01 can be optionally used.

Changing

Have the oil changed by a specialist garage.

Troubleshooting

Engine oil pressure too low

 flashes, lights up at the same time ⚠

or

 flashes, lights up at the same time ⚠

- › Check the engine oil level.

The oil level is OK, the warning light continues to flash:

- › Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine oil level too low

 illuminates together with ⚠

or

 illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding required engine oil top up

- › Check the engine oil level, top up with oil if required.

Engine oil level too high

 illuminates together with ⚠

or

 illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the need to reduce the engine oil level

- › Check the engine oil level.

The oil level is too high:

- › Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine oil level sensor impaired

 illuminates together with ⚠

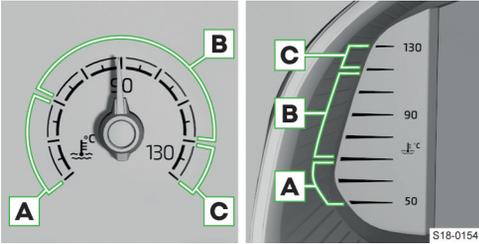
or

 illuminates together with ⚠
Message regarding the engine oil sensor

- › Drive on, exercising appropriate caution.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Coolant

Coolant temperature gauge



- A** Cold area
 - › Avoid high engine speed.
- B** Operating range
- C** High temperature range

Checking the fill level and topping up

Test conditions

- ✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface
- ✓ The engine is turned off and cooled

Checking the level



The fill level must be within the marked range.

- › If the fill level is below the mark **MIN**, top up the coolant.

① NOTICE

Danger of damage to the engine compartment!

- ▶ Do not top up the coolant above the marked area. The coolant could be forced out of the cooling system when heated.

① NOTICE

There must be a small quantity of coolant in the tank.

- ▶ Do not add coolant when the tank is empty.
- ▶ Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Refilling

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

The cooling system is pressurised.

- ▶ Do not open the cap of the coolant expansion tank while the engine is warm. Let the engine cool down.
- › Place a wipe on the lid of the tank and carefully unscrew the lid.

- › Refill with coolant of the correct specification.
- › Screw on the cap until it clicks into place.

Specification

To refill the coolant additive use G12evo (TL 774 L).

① NOTICE

Risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine!

Adding coolant that does not conform to the correct specification can reduce the corrosion protection of the cooling system.

Troubleshooting

Coolant level is too low

 illuminates together with 

or

 illuminates together with 
Message concerning the required coolant check

- › Check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is OK:

- › Check the fuse for radiator fan, replace if required » [page 158, Replacing a fuse.](#)

If the fuse is OK but the indicator light lights up again:

- › Stop driving! Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Coolant temperature too high

 illuminates together with 

or

 illuminates together with 
Report regarding the engine overheating

- › Stop driving.
- › Stop the engine and allow it to cool.
- › Drive on after the indicator light goes out.

Engine fault

 illuminates together with 

or

 illuminates together with 
› Stop driving!

- › Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

There is no coolant of the correct specification available

- › Top up with distilled or demineralised water.
- › Have the correct coolant mixing ratio corrected by a specialist garage as soon as possible.

Another substance was used for topping up, other than distilled or demineralised water:

- › Have the coolant changed by a specialist garage.

It is not possible to top up with a sufficient amount of coolant

- › Stop driving.
- › Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

There is a loss of coolant

- › Top up the coolant and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine electronics

Troubleshooting

Petrol engine control faulty

EPC illuminates

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Diesel engine control faulty

 flashes

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Diesel preheating system faulty

 illuminates, or does not illuminate after the ignition is switched on

Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Particle filter

Troubleshooting

Clogged particle filter

 illuminates together with 

or

 illuminates together with 

- › Clean the filter.

I When the indicator light is on, it must be assumed that fuel consumption will be higher, engine

power will be reduced, and the START-STOPP function will not be available.

Filter cleaning

Conditions for cleaning

- ✓ The engine is warm.
- ✓ For vehicles with manual transmission, observe the gear recommendation shown in the display of the instrument cluster.

Procedure for vehicles with diesel engines

- › Drive at a speed of at least 60 km/h at engine speeds of at least 2000 rpm.

If the filter is successfully cleaned, the indicator light goes off.  or .

If the indicator light  or  does not go off within 40 minutes, no filter cleaning was performed.

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Procedure for vehicles with petrol engines

- › Drive at a speed of at least 80 km/h at engine speeds between 3000-5000 rpm.
- › Release the accelerator pedal and let the vehicle roll with the gear engaged for a few seconds.
- › Repeat this procedure several times.

If the filter is successfully cleaned, the indicator light goes off.  or .

If the indicator light  or  does not go off within 30 minutes, no filter cleaning was performed.

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Exhaust control system

Troubleshooting

Emission control system faulty

 illuminates
Driving in emergency mode is possible - a noticeable reduction in engine performance may occur.

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Fuel filter

Troubleshooting

Water in the diesel fuel filter

 illuminates together with 

or

 illuminates together with 

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Radiator blinds

Usage

The radiator blinds reduce emissions harmful to the environment and CO₂-Emissions and saving fuel.

Troubleshooting

If the display of the instrument cluster shows a message relating to the function restriction of the blinds, the maximum speed of the vehicle is limited to 160 km/h.

The cause may be ice or snow in the area around the blinds. After the ice or snow has thawed, the blinds are functional again.

- › Should the impairment not be due to ice or snow, assistance from a specialist should be sought.

Fuel filler flap

Opening the fuel filler flap



- › Press the flap and open it.

AdBlue

Regulations

Only use AdBlue® that corresponds with the ISO 22241-1 standard. Do not add additives to AdBlue®.

AdBlue® is a registered trademark of VDA and is also popular as AUS 32 (Aqueous Urea Solution) or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

Functionality

To reduce pollutant emissions, a urea solution is automatically injected into the exhaust system - AdBlue®.

AdBlue® freezes at temperatures below -11 C. The system function is ensured by automatic heating.

Checking the fill level and topping up

Checking the level

The AdBlue® level is monitored automatically.

The range with the existing AdBlue® tank fill level as well as the indication of the minimum and maximum AdBlue® top up quantity can be viewed in the driving data in the instrument cluster display under the menu item .

If the range with the existing AdBlue® tank fill level drops to 0 km, it is not possible to start the engine.

- › If possible, top up AdBlue® to the maximum level.

Requirements for refilling

- ✓ Vehicle unlocked
- ✓ Stationary heating switched off
- ✓ Ignition off
- ✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface

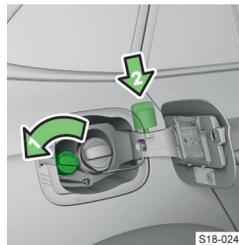
Methods of refilling

- ▶ With the fuel nozzle at the petrol station
- ▶ With the refill bottle or from the canister
- ▶ At a specialist garage

For refilling using refill bottles or canisters, we recommend using refill bottles and canisters from ŠKODA original parts. The refill bottles are equipped with overflow protective function.

Refilling

- › Open the tank flap.



- › Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
- › Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
- › Refill AdBlue®.

The AdBlue® tank is full when the fuel nozzle switches off or as soon as no more AdBlue®

flows out of the refill bottle. Do not continue refilling.

- › Place the tank cap on the filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
- › Close the tank flap and click into place.
- › Before starting the engine, leave the ignition on for 30 seconds to allow the system to detect the refilling.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the system for injecting AdBlue® in to the exhaust system!

- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum refill quantity specified in the instrument cluster.
- ▶ The service life of AdBlue® is 4 years. If the tank contents are not consumed within this period, have them replaced by a specialist garage. When topping up, do not use AdBlue® that is past its expiry date.

Troubleshooting**AdBlue®-Level too low**

or or illuminates

- ▶ Refill AdBlue®.

AdBlue®-system malfunction.

or or illuminates

- ▶ Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Technical data

AdBlue®-tank filling level is about 12 litres.

Petrol**What you should be mindful of****⚠ DANGER**

Risk of death!

Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- ▶ **Never run the fuel tank completely empty!**

If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for vehicle operation, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will let you know whether a suitable fuel is offered in the associated country.

Regulations**Standards**

Petrol must comply with European standard EN 228 (in Russia, GOST 32513-2013).

Only use **unleaded petrol** that contains **max 10%** bioethanol (**E10**).

I We recommend using petrol with additives, which is available at petrol stations at the petrol pumps.

Octane number

Use the petrol with the octane number prescribed for your vehicle.

Petrol with an octane number that is one **higher** than the one prescribed for your vehicle can be used without restriction.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- ▶ When petrol with a lower than the prescribed octane is used, only continue driving at mid-range engine speeds and with minimal strain on the engine.
- ▶ Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- ▶ Do not use petrol with an octane number that **lower** than **91**!

Prescribed petrol 95 / min. 92 or 93 RON / ROZ

We recommend using petrol **95 ROZ**.

Optionally, the petrol **92** or **93 ROZ** can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, **91 RON** petrol may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Specified petrol is unleaded, min. 95 RON / ROZ

Use min. **95 ROZ** petrol.

Using higher octane petrol than **95 RON** may result in improved performance and lower fuel consumption.

In an **emergency** **91. 92** or **93 RON** may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Prescribed petrol 98 / (95) RON / ROZ

We recommend using petrol **98 ROZ**.

95 RON petrol may be used as an option (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency** **91. 92** or **93 RON** may be used (low power loss, slightly increased fuel consumption).

Additive**ⓘ NOTICE**

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- ▶ Do not use petrol containing metal-based additives, e.g. manganese, iron, lead, and do not use, for example, any LRP-petrol - lead replacement petrol.
- ▶ Do not add any additional additives to the petrol in accordance with EN 228.
- ▶ If petrol is not used in accordance with EN 228, we recommend obtaining information from a specialist company regarding the possible use of petrol additives approved by ŠKODA AUTO.

Requirements for refuelling

- ✓ Vehicle unlocked
- ✓ Ignition off

Refilling

- › Open the tank flap.



- › Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
- › Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
- › Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
- › Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle

switches off.

- › Remove the fuel nozzle and put it back on the petrol pump.
- › Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
- › Close the tank flap and click into place.

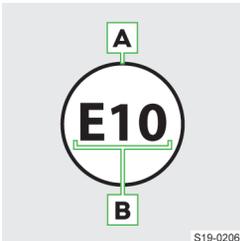
Troubleshooting

If fuel other than unleaded petrol has been used as per standards applicable to your vehicle

- › Neither start the engine nor switch on the ignition.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



- A** Unleaded petrol
- B** Organic share as a percentage

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 50 litres, including a reserve of approx. 7 litres.

For natural gas vehicles, the content of the petrol tank is approximately 9 litres.



illuminates - the fuel level has reached the reserve area.

Diesel

What you should be mindful of

⚠ DANGER

Risk of death!
Fuel and fuel vapours are explosive.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of serious damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- ▶ **Never run the fuel tank completely empty!**

If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than that intended for vehicle operation, please contact a ŠKODA Partner. They will let you know whether a suitable fuel is offered in the associated country.

Regulations

Standards

The diesel fuel must comply with European standard EN 590 (in Russia, GOST 32511-2013 or GOST R 55475-2013).

Only use a **diesel fuel** that contains a **maximum** of 7 % biodiesel (**B7**).

ⓘ We recommend using diesel with additives, which is available at petrol stations at the petrol pumps.

Operation in different weather conditions

Only use a diesel fuel according to the current or the expected weather conditions.

Additive

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system!

- ▶ Do not use RME biofuel, even as a diesel fuel additive.
- ▶ Do not add any additional additives to the diesel in accordance with EN 590.
- ▶ If diesel is not used in accordance with EN 590, we recommend obtaining information from a specialist company regarding the possible use of diesel additives approved by ŠKODA AUTO.

Requirements for refuelling

- ✓ Vehicle unlocked
- ✓ Ignition off

Refilling

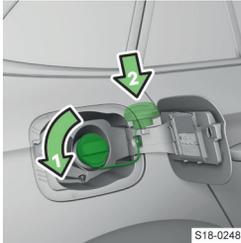
Misfuelling protection

The fuel filler neck on diesel vehicles may be equipped with a misfuelling protection device.

In some countries, the diameter of the diesel fuel nozzle may be identical to that of the petrol nozzle. Before driving in these countries, have the protection device removed by a specialist garage.

Refilling

- › Open the tank flap.



- › Turn the tank cap in the direction of the arrow and remove it.
- › Place the tank cap on the tank flap.
- › Insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck up to the stop and refuel.
- › Do not continue refuelling after the fuel nozzle switches off.

- › Remove the fuel nozzle and put it back on the petrol pump.
- › Place the fuel cap on the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it clicks into place.
- › Close the tank flap and click into place.

Troubleshooting

If fuel other than diesel has been used as per applicable standards

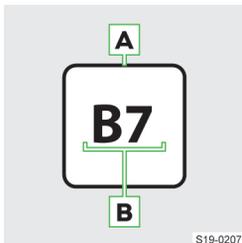
- › Neither start the engine nor switch on the ignition.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

The diesel nozzle cannot be inserted correctly into the tank filler neck

- › If the nozzle cannot be inserted correctly into the tank filler neck, move it slightly back and forth when plugging it in.

Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



- A** Diesel
- B** Organic share as a percentage

The fuel tank has a capacity of about 50 litres, including a reserve of approx. 7 litres.



illuminates - the fuel level has reached the reserve area.

CNG (compressed natural gas)

What you should be mindful of

⚠ WARNING

Natural gas is highly explosive and highly flammable.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of death, explosion or fire!

- ▶ Do not ignore the smell of gas in the vehicle or when refuelling.
- ▶ The natural gas tanks in the vehicle must not be exposed to undesirable heat sources.
- ▶ Do not enter the vehicle when refuelling with natural gas. Electrostatic discharges may occur when entering the vehicle. If the fuelling nozzle of the refuelling system is subsequently touched, sparks may form and a fire may break out.

⚠ WARNING

Touching the floor of the vehicle or an accident may damage the natural gas containers. If damaged natural gas tanks are refuelled, they can burst and cause serious or fatal injuries!

- ▶ Ensure a gas system test is carried out immediately by a specialist company.
- ▶ Do not refuel using natural gas until a gas system test has been carried out.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the engine and the exhaust system.

- ▶ Do not use Liquefied Natural Gas (LPG), Liquefied Petroleum Gas (LPG) or Hythane (hydrogen/methane mixture).

Regulations



Variants of the CNG sticker in natural gas vehicles.



Position of the sticker

Regular gas system checks

On natural gas-powered vehicles regular gas system checks must be carried out at a specialist workshop. The vehicle operator is responsible for ensuring these tests are carried out properly.

For new cars, this is after 4 years and then every 2 years

- ▶ Check the gas system for leaks and carry out an examination of gas containers
- ▶ Check the filler cap
- ▶ Check the condition of fuel filler tubes and the sealing ring in the fuel filler tubes, and clean sealing ring if necessary

Lifetime of the containers

The lifetime of the natural gas containers is max. 20 years.

- › Ensure the gas tanks are replaced at the appropriate time.

Indicates the natural gas system test.

 illuminates
Notification regarding the remaining days until the natural gas system is checked

- › Ensure the test is carried out by a specialist company.

① NOTICE

If the natural gas system is not tested by the due date, the natural gas drive will not be available in your vehicle.

Functionality

A natural gas vehicle also has a petrol engine » page 151,

Natural gas operation display

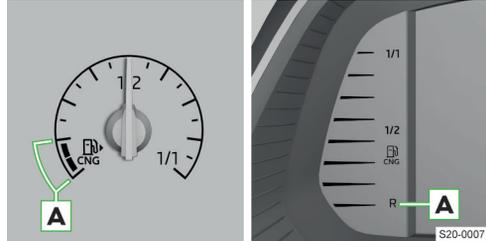
 illuminates

Automatically switching over from natural gas mode to petrol mode

The vehicle automatically switches from natural gas to petrol, for example, if the following situations occur.

- ▶ With an empty natural gas tank or insufficient pressure in the tank.
- ▶ After natural gas refuelling - the fuel system of the vehicle determines the quality of natural gas.
- ▶ At very low ambient temperatures.

Gas gauge



A The natural gas supply has reached the reserve area.

⚠ WARNING

Danger of remaining in traffic.

- ▶ After the indicator light illuminates  Fill up with petrol as soon as possible.

▶ Never fully empty the petrol tank.

- ▶ Track the range with natural gas in the drive data menu item » page 57. Plan to fill up with natural gas in good time.

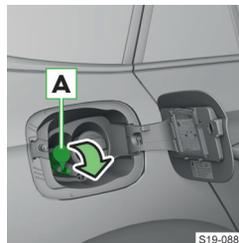
I Every six months, to ensure the correct functioning of the fuel system, it is recommended that the fuel tank for petrol should be run down until the warning light comes on.  run empty.

Requirements for refuelling

- ✓ Vehicle unlocked
- ✓ Ignition off

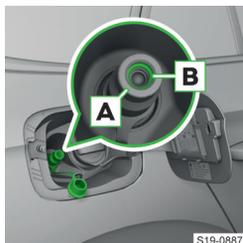
Refilling

- › Open the tank flap.



- › Remove the cap **A** from the natural gas filler neck.
- › Plug the coupling of the refuelling system onto the filler neck and start refuelling with natural gas and while doing so, follow the instructions given on the refuelling system.

The refuelling system stops the refuelling process automatically when the tank is full.



- › After releasing the coupling of the refuelling system, check whether the sealing ring **B** is stuck in the filler neck **A**.
- › If the sealing ring has slipped on the connector, reinsert it into the filler neck.

- › Place the cap on the filler neck.
- › Close the tank flap and click into place.

i The natural gas refuelling systems have an overflow protection with a dependence to the outdoor temperature. With very high outside temperatures, it may not be possible to fully refuel the natural gas tank.

i If the car is parked directly after a refuelling operation, on restart the pointer of the gas gauge may not show exactly the same level as immediately after the filling process. This is not a leak in the system, but a reduction in pressure due to the cooling of the gas in the natural gas container after refuelling.



CNG (compressed natural gas)

The fuel tank is built with a capacity of approximately 13.8 kg CNG.

Troubleshooting

Unknown refuelling system

Natural gas refuelling may vary from station to station. If refuelling with natural gas at a station is unfamiliar to you, get someone to instruct you or allow the fuelling operation to be carried out by the station staff.

Gas leakage

If a gas leak is suspected (perceptible odour), proceed as follows.

- › Stop the vehicle.
- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Extinguish cigarettes, switch off spark-producing or incendiary items and remove them from the vehicle.
- › Open doors and the boot lid to ventilate the vehicle sufficiently.
- › Do not continue to drive if the odour persists.
- › If it is not possible to drive a vehicle with a gas leak out of an enclosed area (e.g. tunnel, underpass, garage, ferry etc.), call the emergency services immediately.
- › Ensure a gas system test is carried out immediately by a specialist company.

Technical data

The fuel prescribed for your vehicle is indicated on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

12 volt vehicle battery and fuses

12 volt vehicle battery

What you should be mindful of

Explanation of the warning symbols on the 12-volt vehicle battery

-  Wear safety goggles!
-  The battery acid of the 12-volt vehicle battery is very caustic. Wear gloves and eye protection.
-  Keep fire, sparks and open light away from the 12 volt vehicle battery! Do not smoke!
-  When charging the 12 volt vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced!
-  Keep children away from the 12 volt vehicle battery!
-  Refer to the owner's manual!

Functionality - Protection against discharge of the 12 volt vehicle battery

Possible causes for the discharge of the 12 volt vehicle battery

- ▶ Worn 12 volt vehicle battery
- ▶ Frequent short journeys
- ▶ Low temperatures
- ▶ Vehicle stationary for a long period of time

Automatic system-related discharge protection measure with regard to the 12 volt vehicle battery

- ▶ Increasing the engine idling speed
- ▶ Switching off certain consumers or limiting their power

Recommended measure to be taken when vehicle is stationary for more than three weeks

- › Disconnect the ⊖ terminal of the 12 volt vehicle battery.

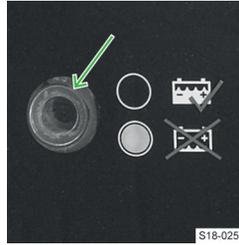
Checking and charging the 12 volt vehicle battery

Checking the condition

The condition of the 12 volt vehicle battery is checked by a specialist garage during servicing.

Checking the acid level

Applies to a 12 volt vehicle battery with an acid level indicator.



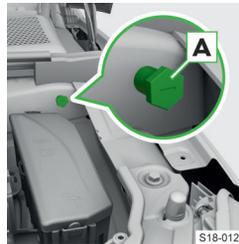
- › Tap on the indicator before testing, to clear air bubbles.
- ▶ Black colour - the acid level is OK.
- ▶ Colourless or pale yellow colour - acid level is too low, the 12 volt vehicle battery must be replaced.

Requirements for charging a 12 volt vehicle battery

- ✓ Ignition off
- ✓ Power consumers switched off

12 volt vehicle battery charging

To charge the 12 volt vehicle battery fully, set a charging current of max. of 0.1 times the battery capacity.



Earth point

- › Connect the ⊕ terminal of the charger to the ⊕ terminal of the 12 volt vehicle battery.
- › Connect the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the earth point [A].
- › Plug the charger's power cable into the socket and switch on the device.

- › After charging, switch off the charger and unplug the power cable from the socket.
- › Disconnect the charger terminals from the 12 volt vehicle battery.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of explosion!

- ▶ During charging, hydrogen is released. An explosion can also be caused by sparks, for example, when disconnecting or loosening the cable connector.
- ▶ Never charge a frozen or thawed 12 volt vehicle battery.
- ▶ Do not carry out the so-called quick charging of the 12 volt vehicle battery yourself, but have it carried out by a specialist garage.

① NOTICE

A flat 12 volt vehicle battery can freeze easily!

Troubleshooting

The 12 volt vehicle battery does not charge while the engine is running

 or  illuminates

- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Engine fault

 or  illuminates
 › Stop driving!

- › Stop the engine and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Disconnecting, connecting and replacing**⚠ CAUTION**

Risk of fire!

- ▶ Do not mix up the connection cables.

Disconnecting

- › Close the electric boot lid, all windows and the electric sunblind.
- › Switch off the ignition and any connected power consumers.
- › Disconnect the \ominus terminal and then the \oplus terminal.

Connecting

- › Connect the \oplus terminal and then the \ominus terminal.

After switching on the ignition, the indicator lights light up  from the isolation box.

- › If, after a short distance, one of the above-mentioned indicator lights does not go out, seek the help of a specialist garage.

Operate these vehicle functions after disconnecting and connecting the 12 volt vehicle battery

- ▶ Clock setting » page 55.
- ▶ Window operation » page 28.
- ▶ Sunblind » page 29.

Changing

The new 12 volt vehicle battery must have the same parameters as the original battery. Have the replacement carried out by a specialist garage.

Using the jump-starting cable**Usage**

With the help of jump start cables, a vehicle with a discharged or defective 12-volt vehicle battery can be started using the 12-volt vehicle battery of another vehicle.

What you should be mindful of**⚠ WARNING**

Risk of explosion and chemical burns!

- ▶ Do not jump start with the 12 volt vehicle battery of another vehicle under the following conditions:

- ▶ The discharged 12 volt vehicle battery is frozen. A discharged 12 volt vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C.
- ▶ The acid level of the 12-volt vehicle battery is too low » page 156.

Use jump leads with a sufficient cross section and insulated terminal clamps.

The rated voltage of both batteries must be 12V. The capacity (in Ah) of the 12 volt charging vehicle battery must not be significantly lower than the capacity of the discharged 12 volt vehicle battery.

Use another vehicle's 12 volt vehicle battery to operate the vehicle**⚠ WARNING**

Risk of injury! Danger of damage to vehicle!

- ▶ Lay the jump start cables so that they cannot become caught by rotating parts in the engine compartment.

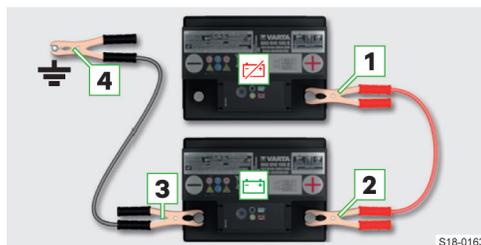
ⓘ NOTICE

Short circuit!

- ▶ The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must not touch each other.
- ▶ The cable connected to the positive pole of the 12 volt vehicle battery must not come into contact with electrically conductive vehicle parts.
- ▶ The vehicles must not touch each other.

Connect the jump start cable

- › Switch off the ignition.
- › Connect the terminal clamps of the jump start cables in the order shown in the legend.



 discharged 12 volt vehicle battery

 current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery

1 \oplus -pole of the discharged 12-volt vehicle battery

2 \oplus -pole of the current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery

3 \ominus -pole of the current-supplying 12 volt vehicle battery (or earth point)

4 \oplus Earth point of the vehicle with discharged 12 volt vehicle battery



S18-0164

Earth point

Start the engine

- › Start the engine of the current-giving vehicle and let it idle (applies to vehicles with combustion engine)
- Or:
- › Switch on the electric drive of the vehicle supplying power (applies to vehicles with an electric motor).
- › Start up the vehicle with the discharged 12 volt vehicle battery.
- › If the engine of the vehicle with the discharged 12 volt vehicle battery does not start within 10 seconds, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

Disconnecting the cable

- › Disconnect the cables in the reverse order from connection.

Fuses

What you should be mindful of

① NOTICE

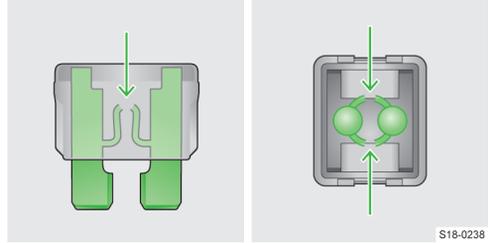
Fire hazard and risk of damage to the electrical system.

- ▶ Do not repair fuses or replace them with stronger fuses.
- ▶ Replace the defective fuse with a new fuse with the same amperage.
- ▶ We recommend using replacement fuses from the ŠKODA Genuine Accessories range. These guarantee reliable and safe protection of the vehicle's electric system.
- ▶ If a newly inserted fuse blows again, seek the help of a specialist garage.

ⓘ One fuse may belong to several consumers. One consumer may have several fuses.

Functionality

Fuses protect the vehicle systems from damage caused by excessive current. The fuse blows when the current is exceeded.



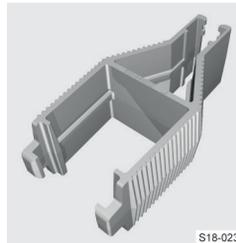
S18-0238

Blown fuse

Conditions for replacing a fuse

- ✓ Ignition key removed (vehicle without starter button)
- ✓ Ignition switched off and driver's door open (vehicle with starter button)
- ✓ All consumers switched off

Replacing a fuse



S18-0237

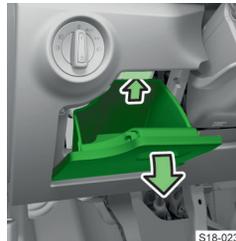
- › Replace the fuse with the clamp located on the inside of the fuse box cover in the engine compartment.
- › Use the appropriate end of the clamp according to the fuse dimensions.

Fuses in the dash panel

Overview

Access to the fuses

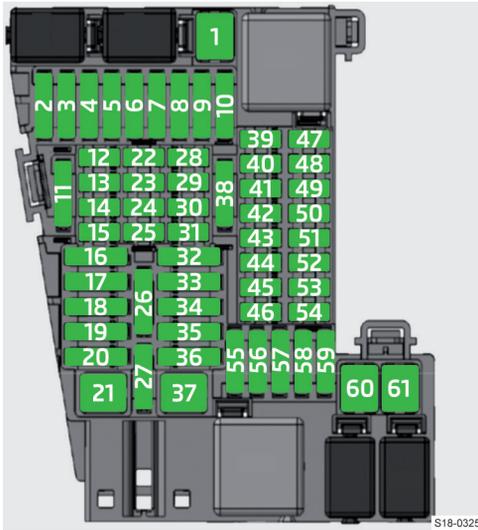
- › Open the storage compartment on the driver's side.



S18-0239

- › Press the button and open the tray.
- › Pull the tray out by pulling it towards you.
- › Change the fuse.
- › Insert and close the tray at the original location.

Fuses overview



S18-0325

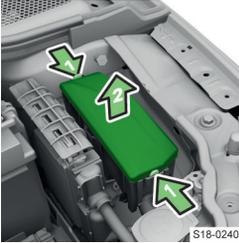
Fuse number	Consumer
1	Tow hitch
2	LED headlights - left side
3	Music amplifier
4	Headlamp cleaning system
5	Sliding/tilting roof
6	Central locking, windscreen washer, rear window wiper
7	Seat heating - rear
8	Climatronic
9	LED headlights - right side
10	Tow hitch
11	Electric boot lid
12	Heated steering wheel
13	Light switch, diagnosis connection, rain sensor, control lever under the steering wheel, front windscreen heating
14	Windscreen washer system
15	Instrument cluster, emergency call
16	Light - right side
17	Electric windows - right side
18	Windscreen wiper
19	Infotainment
20	Heated rear window
21	SCR (AdBlue®)
22	Not used
23	Rear view camera
24	Phonebox, GSM antenna, USB connection, Infotainment screen
25	Control lever under the steering wheel
26	Databus
27	Shock absorber adjustment (adaptive suspension)

Fuse number	Consumer
28	Alarm system sensor
29	Alarm system horn
30	Ignition (ignition lock)
31	Air conditioning, heating
32	Passenger belt tensioners
33	Electric windows - left side
34	Driver belt tensioners
35	Light - left side
36	Horn
37	Heating of the front seats
38	Interior lighting, button lighting, headlight cleaning system, ambient lighting, manual air conditioning, heating
39	Assist systems
40	Light switch, headlights, headlight leveling, diagnostic connection, reversing light switch, control lever under the steering wheel
41	Interior mirror dimming, exterior mirror adjustment, air conditioning, CNG relay
42	Clutch pedal switch, engine start
43	Rear window wiper
44	Airbag system, airbag control lamp
45	Windscreen wiper
46	Seat heating - rear
47	Not used
48	Electric steering column lock, Kessy (keyless lock and start system)
49	SCR (AdBlue®) / CNG
50	Rear USB ports, USB port on the interior mirror
51	Not used
52	Cigarette lighter / 12 volt socket in front
53	Ignition key trigger lock, automatic transmission
54	12 volt socket in the luggage compartment
55	Not used
56	Manual air conditioning, heating
57	Not used
58	Windscreen washer system
59	Exterior mirror heating, washer nozzle heating
60	Tow hitch
61	Tow hitch

Fuses in the engine compartment

Overview

Access to the fuses



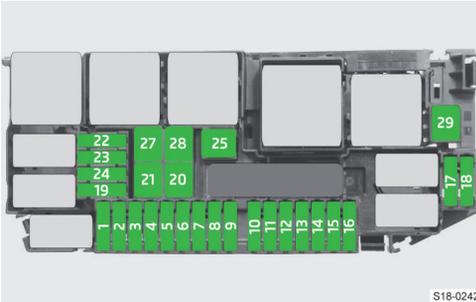
- › Simultaneously press the locking buttons on the fuse box cover and remove the cover.
- › Change the fuse.
- › Fit the cover and click into place.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of water entering the fuse box.

- ▶ Fit the cover correctly and click into place securely.

Fuses overview



Fuse number	Consumer
15	Automatic gearbox
16	Not used
17	Engine control system
18	Starter
19	Not used
20	ESC
21	ESC
22	Not used
23	Not used
24	Not used
25	Electric auxiliary heater, radiator fan
27	Electric auxiliary heater, radiator fan
28	Electric auxiliary heater
29	Heated windscreen

Fuse number	Consumer
1	Engine control unit
2	Exhaust flap, coolant pump, radiator blinds, SCR (AdBlue®), engine components
3	Lambda sensors, NOx control unit
4	Fuel pump
5	Radiator fan, boost pressure regulator, oil level and oil temperature sensor, engine components
6	Crankcase breather, glow plug system, engine components
7	Brake system (vacuum pump)
8	Fuel pump, engine components
9	Brake light switch
10	Databus, BCM controller, battery data module
11	Not used
12	Air conditioning
13	Not used
14	ESC, engine control system, engine components

Wheels

Tyres and rims

What you should be mindful of

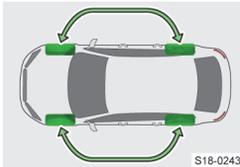
ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Protect tyres from contact with lubricants and fuel.
- ▶ Always store wheels or tyres in a cool, dry and, where possible, dark place. Tyres without rims should be stored in an upright position.
- ▶ Alloy rims can be damaged by grit.
- ▶ Do not use light alloy rims with a high-shine surface in wintry weather conditions or with snow chains

Causes of uneven tyre wear

- ▶ Improper tyre pressure.
- ▶ Driving style (e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration and deceleration).
- ▶ Wheel alignment errors.
- ▶ Incorrect wheel balancing.

Wheel changes



For uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you change the wheels every 10,000 km according to the schedule.

Advice for tyre assembly

- ▶ With directional tyres, the correct direction of rotation must be observed. The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by arrows on the wall of the tyre.
- ▶ Always replace the tyres by the axle.

Additional information

Only fit radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle.

Approved tyre sizes are specified in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COC Document).

The declaration of conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner (valid for some countries and some models).

Overview of tyre labelling

Explanation of tyre markings

e.g. 205/60 R 16 92 H

205 Tyre width in mm

60 Height/width ratio in %

R Code letter for the type of tyre - Radial

16 Diameter of wheel in inches

92 Load index

H Speed symbol

Load index

The load index indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre.

88 560 kg

89 580 kg

90 600 kg

91 615 kg

92 630 kg

93 650 kg

94 670 kg

95 690 kg

Speed symbol

The speed symbol indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in the category concerned.

S 180 km/h

T 190 km/h

U 200 km/h

H 210 km/h

V 240 km/h

W 270 km/h

Y 300 km/h

⚠ WARNING

- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum permissible load and speed for the mounted tyres.

Tread wear indicators



Wear indicators are located in the profile of the tyres that display the permissible minimum tread depth.

Markings on the walls of the tyres with the letters TWI or other symbols (e.g. Δ) indicate the position of the wear indicators.

A tyre is to be regarded as worn out when this wear indicator is flush with the tread.

□ The tread depth can be measured with a tread depth gauge on the ice scraper. The ice scraper is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident!

- ▶ Do not use worn tyres.

Tyre manufacturing date

The date of manufacture is indicated on the tyre sidewall.

For example, DOT ... 10 20 means that the tyres were produced in the 10th week of the year 2020.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

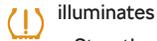
- ▶ Do not use tyres that are older than 6 years.

Troubleshooting

Help with a flat tyre

- ▶ Spare and emergency spare wheel » page 162
- ▶ Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle » page 163
- ▶ Breakdown kit » page 164

Change of tyre pressure



illuminates

- ▶ Stop the vehicle.
- ▶ Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Show tyres with modified pressure

- ▶ In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition:

CAR >

Or:

MENU > >

All-season or winter tires

Usage

All-season or winter tyres improve handling in winter weather conditions. They are characterised by 'M+S' and a mountaintop and snowflake symbol

What you should be mindful of

For the best possible handling, use tyres on all four wheels with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm.

Change winter tyres to summer tyres at the appropriate time. Summer tyres have better driving and braking characteristics on snow- and ice-free roads and at temperatures above 7 °C.

Usage conditions

If all-season or winter tyres are installed that have a lower speed category than the actual specified maximum vehicle speed, then proceed as follows:

- ▶ In Infotainment, set the speed limit according to the category of tyres fitted.
- ▶ In the driver's field of view, affix a warning label with the maximum value of the speed category intended for the tyres fitted (applies only to certain countries).

Settings

The speed limit setting for tyres is set in the Infotainment in the following menu item:

CAR > >

Or:

MENU > > >

Snow chains

Usage

The snow chains improve driving in wintry road conditions.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of accident as well as tyre damage!

- ▶ Do not use chains on routes that are free from snow and ice.

What you should be mindful of

- ▶ Before fitting the snow chains, remove the full wheel trims.
- ▶ Only mount the snow chains on the front wheels.

Technical data

Permitted rim/tyre combinations for mounting of snow chains:

Rim size	Tyre size
6Jx16 ET35	195/60 R16

Only fit snow chains with links and locks that are no larger than 13 mm.

Spare and emergency spare wheel

Overview

Spare wheel

- ▶ The dimensions of a standard spare wheel correspond to the dimensions of the wheels mounted on the vehicle.
- ▶ A temporary spare wheel is provided with a warning label on the rim. This wheel is intended to enable you to reach the nearest specialist garage.

Inflate a space saver wheel with the maximum prescribed pressure.

Emergency wheel

A warning label is displayed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel. This wheel is intended to enable you to reach the nearest specialist garage.

An emergency wheel is significantly narrower than the wheels mounted ex-factory.

Remove the wheel on vehicles without sound system and replace

The spare wheel or emergency wheel is mounted in a recess under the floor covering or the variable loading floor in the boot.

Removing



S18-0229

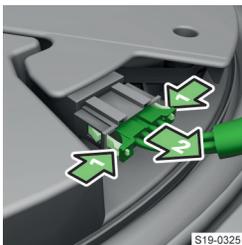
- › Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
- › Unscrew the lock nut.
- › Take out the wheel.

Inserting

- › Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.
- › Pull the fixing band through the opposite holes in the wheel rim.
- › Screw in the locknut until it stops.
- › Replace the box with the tool kit into the wheel and secure it with the tape.

Remove the wheel on vehicles with sound system and replace

Removing



S19-0325

- › Loosen the retaining belt and take out the box with the tool kit.
- › Press the safety button and remove the plug.



S18-0228

- › Unscrew the lock nut.
- › Remove the bass loudspeaker.
- › Take out the wheel.

Inserting

- › Insert the wheel into the wheel well with the outside facing downwards.
- › Insert the bass loudspeaker.
- › Screw in the locknut until it stops.
- › Insert the connector in the bass loudspeaker.
- › Place the box with the tool kit and secure it with the tape.

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

What you should be mindful of

Before changing

- › Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
- › Turn off the engine.
- › Let all of the occupants get out. During the wheel change they should not stand on the road, e.g. behind the crash barriers.
- › Close all doors, the boot and bonnet.
- › Uncouple any trailers.

Raise vehicle

⚠ WARNING

Always ensure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip!

- ▶ Provide a wide and firm base under the jack on loose surfaces.
- ▶ Create a non-slip base (e.g. a rubber floor mat) under the jack on a smooth surface.
- ▶ Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- ▶ Do not insert any body parts under the raised vehicle.
- ▶ Do not start the engine of the lifted vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of damage to vehicle!

- ▶ Make sure that the jack is attached correctly to the bridge of the sill.

After having been changed

- › Check the tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary.
- › In vehicles with a tyre indicator, save the tyre pressure values in the system.
- › Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts of the mounted tyres checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible.

The specified tightening torque is 120 Nm.

Drive carefully until the tightening torque is checked.

Replace the damaged tyre. It is not recommended to repair the tyre.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Too low a tightening torque may cause the wheel to disengage while driving.
- ▶ Too high a tightening torque can damage the threads and cause the rim to deform.

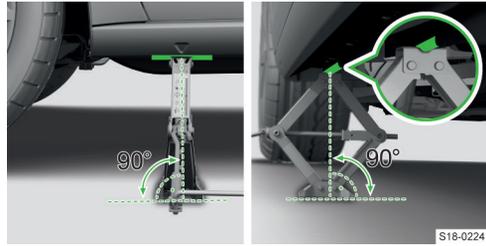
⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Do not grease or lubricate screws.
- ▶ Do not use corroded or damaged screws.

Position the jack and lift the vehicle

Use the jack from the tool kit.



S18-0224

Changing the wheel and raising the vehicle

Release screws

- ▶ If the vehicle has covers over the wheel bolts or wheel trims, remove them.

⚠ WARNING

- ▶ If you step on the key end when loosening the screw, hold on to the vehicle for better stability.



S18-0231

Some vehicles may have anti-theft wheel bolts that protect the wheels from theft.

- ▶ Insert the upper section on the anti-theft wheel bolt until it stops.



S18-0301

- ▶ Place the key on the wheel bolt or on the attachment piece.
- ▶ Turn the screw a maximum of half a turn so that the wheel does not come loose and fall off.

- ▶ Position the jack at the jacking point closest to the wheel to be replaced.
- ▶ Support the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack is located in a vertical position at the jacking point.
- ▶ Use the crank to raise the jack until its claw encloses the bar.
- ▶ Continue to lift the vehicle until the wheel is just off the floor.

Changing a wheel

- ▶ Unscrew the screws and place them on a clean surface.
- ▶ Remove the wheel carefully.
- ▶ Attach the wheel.
- ▶ Slightly screw in the screws.
- ▶ Lower the vehicle.

ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Applies to wheel trims supplied ex-factory or from ŠKODA Original Accessories: the anti-theft wheel bolt should be installed in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim.

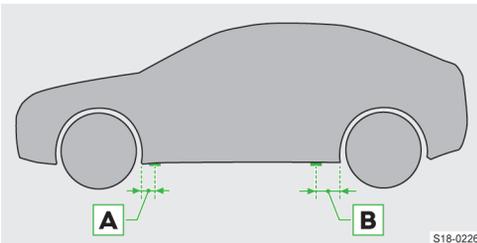
Tighten screws

- ▶ Tighten the opposite wheel bolts including the anti-theft wheel bolt one after the other.
- ▶ Reinstall the cover caps of the wheel bolts or the full wheel covers.

- ▶ Keep the label with the code number of the anti-theft wheel bolts. A replacement upper section can be acquired from ŠKODA original parts based on this.

Jacking points for the jack

The jacking points are located on the lower sill of the vehicle.



S18-0226

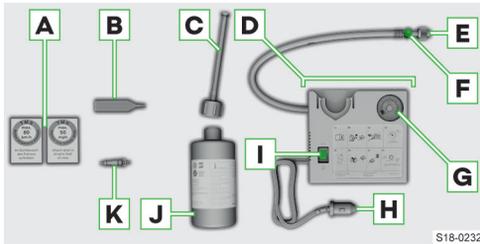
A 15.5 cm

B 25.8 cm

Breakdown kit

Content overview

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.



S18-0232

- A** Sticker with speed indication
- B** Valve remover
- C** Inflation hose with plug
- D** Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor)
- E** Tyre inflation hose
- F** Button for pressure reduction
- G** Pressure indicator
- H** 12 volt cable connector
- I** ON and OFF switch
- J** Tyre inflation bottle
- K** Replacement valve core

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Usage conditions

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit not at all intended to replace a permanent repair on the tyre.

The purpose of the repair is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Change the tyre repaired by the breakdown kit as soon as possible.

Before using the kit

- › Park the vehicle securely and secure it from rolling away.
- › Turn off the engine.
- › Let all of the occupants get out. During the wheel repair they should not stand on the road, e.g. behind the crash barriers.
- › Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
- › Uncouple any trailers.

After using the kit

If a tyre pressure of 2.0 bar cannot be achieved, the tyre is too damaged and cannot be sealed with the puncture set.

- › Stop driving. Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Once a tyre pressure of 2.0–2.5 bar is achieved, continue the journey at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

- › Avoid full accelerations, strong braking and fast cornering.

Information for driving with repaired tyres

- › The pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.
- › If the tyre pressure is 1.3 bar and less, do not continue! Seek the help of a specialist garage.
- › If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar, correct the pressure to the correct value of at least 2 bar and continue driving.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of damage to the compressor!

- ▶ After the maximum running time of the air compressor, allow it to cool for a few minutes.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of burns!

The tyre inflation hose and the air compressor may become hot when inflated.

- ▶ Allow the air compressor and hose to cool for a few minutes.

Usage restrictions

Do not use the kit in the following cases:

- ▶ The rim is damaged.
- ▶ The outdoor temperature is below the minimum temperature indicated in the manual of the tyre filling bottle.
- ▶ Tyre punctures are greater than 4 mm.
- ▶ There is damage to the tyre wall.
- ▶ The expiry date stated on the tyre inflation bottle has expired.

Self-help

Seal the tyres

- › Unscrew the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
- › Unscrew the valve core with the valve insert and place it on a clean surface.
- › Shake the tyre inflation bottle back and forth with sealant.
- › Screw the inflation hose onto the tyre inflater bottle. The film on the closure is pierced automatically.
- › Remove the plug from the inflation hose and push it fully onto the tyre valve.
- › Hold the bottle with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent into the tyre.
- › Remove the filler plug from the valve.
- › Screw in the valve insert.

Inflate tyres

- › Fit the tyre inflation hose of the air compressor to the tyre valve.
- › Secure the vehicle with the parking brake.
- › Start the engine.
- › Plug the connector into the 12 volt socket .
- › Turn on the air compressor.
- › Once a tyre pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar is reached, turn off the air compressor.

Observe the maximum running time of the air compressor according to the directions of the repair kit manufacturer.

- › If an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar has not been reached, remove the tyre inflation hose from the valve.
- › Drive approx. 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to distribute in the tyre.
- › Replace the tire inflation hose on the valve and repeat the inflation procedure.

Tyre pressure

What you should be mindful of

① **NOTICE**

- ▶ Always adjust the tyre pressure to the load.
- ▶ Check the pressure in all tyres at least once a month and before each longer ride.
- ▶ Check the pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.
- ▶ After each change in tyre pressure, save the new values in the tyre control display.

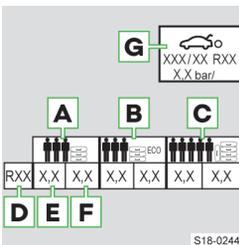
⚠ **WARNING**

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ If tyre pressure loss is very quick, try to stop the vehicle carefully without heavy steering or heavy braking.

Sticker with prescribed tyre pressures

The sticker with prescribed tyre pressures is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap.



- A** Inflation pressure for half load
- B** Inflation pressure for environmentally friendly operation (slightly lower fuel consumption and emissions)
- C** Inflation pressure for a full load
- D** Tyre diameter in inches

ches

This information only serves as information for the prescribed tyre pressure. This is not a listing of approved tyre sizes for your vehicle. These are in the vehicle's technical documentation, as well as in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COC document).

- E** Tyre pressure reading for the front axle tyres
- F** Tyre pressure reading for the rear axle tyres
- G** Prescribed tyre pressure value for the emergency wheel

Tyre pressure monitor

Functionality

The tyre pressure monitoring indicator indicates a change in tyre pressure.

Warning when pressure changes

⚠ illuminates

- › Stop the vehicle.
- › Check the tyres and tyre pressures.

Show tyres with modified pressure

- › In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the tyre condition:

MENU > 🚗 > 🛞

Or:

CAR > 🛞

Function restriction

The system is unable to provide a warning in the event of a very rapid tyre pressure loss, e.g. sudden puncture.

The system function may be restricted in the following cases:

- ▶ Uneven loading of the wheels, e.g. with a trailer attached
- ▶ Sporty driving style
- ▶ Driving on dirt roads
- ▶ Snow chains fitted

Saving tyre pressure values

Store the tyre pressure values in the infotainment

- › Inflate the tyres to the prescribed inflation pressure.
- › Turn on the ignition.
- › In the following menu, select the menu item for displaying the vehicle condition:

CAR > 🛞

Or:

MENU >  > 

- › Using the functional surfaces ◀ ▶ select the tyre control display menu.
- › Tap on the functional surface (⏸)SET.
- › Then follow the instructions on the screen.

Save the tyre pressures in the following cases:

- ▶ Change of tyre pressure
- ▶ Change of one or more wheels
- ▶ Change of position of a wheel on the vehicle
- ▶ Always after covering a distance of 10,000 km or once a year

Troubleshooting

Tyre pressure display faulty

 flashes for about 1 minute and stays on

- › Stop the vehicle, switch off the ignition and start the engine.

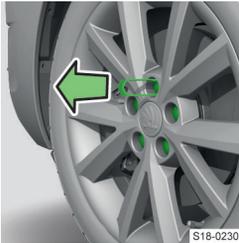
If the symbol  flashes again after starting the engine, there is a system fault.

- › Continue driving, exercising appropriate caution, and seek the help of a specialist garage.

Wheel bolt cover caps

Remove cover caps and install

Disconnecting



- › Push the pull-off clamp onto the cover cap up to the stop.
- › Remove the cover cap.

Installing

- › Push the cover cap onto the wheel bolt to the stop.

Full wheel frame

Removing and installing the trim

Applies to factory built or original accessory trims from ŠKODA.

Disconnecting

- › Hang the clamps for removing the wheel trims at the edge of one of the openings in the trim.
- › Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Installing

- › Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.

When using an anti-theft wheel bolt, it must be located at the location indicated on the bezel.

- › Press the trim, starting at the valve, into the rim on both sides until it engages around the entire circumference.

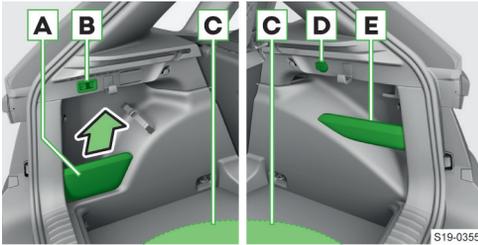
ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Use hand pressure, do not hit the wheel cover.

Storage space and interior equipment

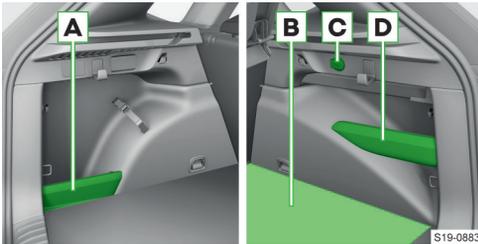
Equipment in the boot

Overview



Boot of a vehicle without natural gas drive

- A** Storage tray
Max. load 2.5 kg
The partition wall of the storage compartment on vehicles with the variable loading floor cannot be removed.
- B** Trailer hitch switch
- C** Under the floor covering: Storage compartment for spare or emergency wheel and vehicle tools
Load on floor covering max. 75 kg
- D** 12-Volt-power socket
- E** Storage tray
Max. load 1.5 kg



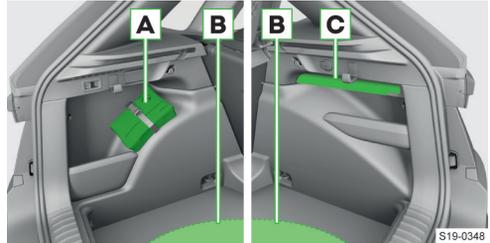
Boot of a natural gas vehicle

- A** Storage tray
Max. load 2.5 kg
- B** Under the floor covering: Storage compartment for on-board tools
Load on floor covering max. 75 kg
- C** 12-Volt-power socket
- D** Storage tray
Max. load 1.5 kg

Emergency equipment

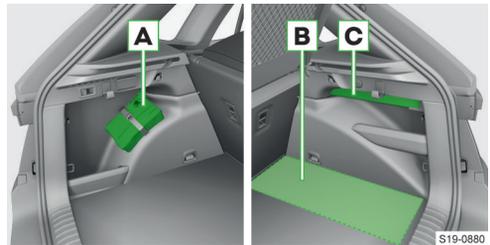
Overview

Emergency equipment in the boot of a vehicle without natural gas drive



- A** Placing of the first-aid kit
- B** Tool kit
- C** Placing of the warning triangle

Emergency equipment in the boot of a natural gas vehicle



- A** Placing of the first-aid kit
- B** Tool kit
- C** Placing of the warning triangle

Storage compartment for the reflective vest

The storage compartment for the reflective vest is in the storage compartment of the front door.

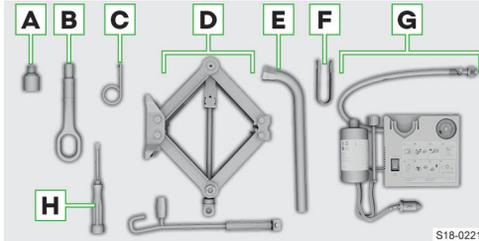
Fire extinguisher under the passenger seat



Tool kit

Overview

Depending on the equipment, not all of the following components may be included in the tool kit.

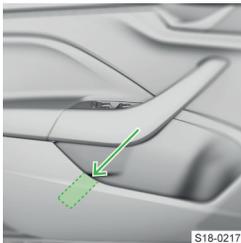


S18-0221

- A** Attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts
- B** Towing lug
- C** Bracket for removing the full wheel covers
- D** Jack with sign and crank
- E** Wheel wrench
- F** Removal clip for the wheel bolt cover caps
- G** Breakdown set
- H** Screwdriver

The declaration of conformity is enclosed with the jack or the logbook folder.

Storage compartment for the reflective vest

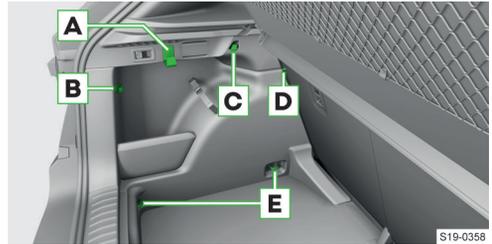


S18-0217

Fasteners in the boot

Overview

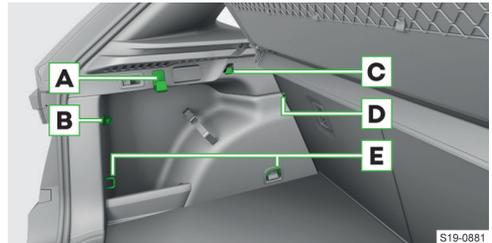
Vehicle without variable loading floor



S19-0358

- A** Bag hooks
Max. load 7.5 kg
- B** Fasteners for securing the fastening nets
- C** Hook for securing the fastening nets
Max. load 1.5 kg
- D** Lashing eye for fastening the fastening nets
- E** Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 350 kg

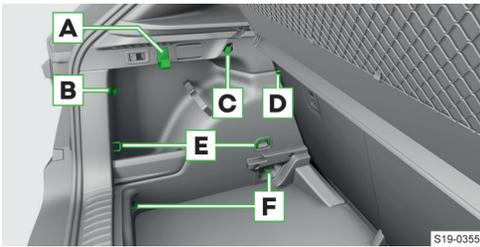
Natural gas vehicle



S19-0881

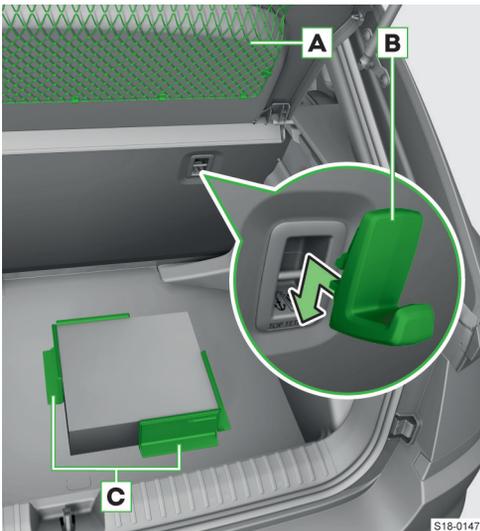
- A** Bag hooks
Max. load 7.5 kg
- B** Fasteners for securing the fastening nets
- C** Hook for securing the fastening nets
Max. load 1.5 kg
- D** Lashing eye for fastening the fastening nets
- E** Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 350 kg

Vehicle with variable loading floor



- A** Bag hooks
Max. load 7.5 kg
- B** Fasteners for securing the fastening nets
- C** Hook for securing the fastening nets
Max. load 1.5 kg
- D** Lashing eye for fastening the fastening nets
- E** Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 350 kg
- F** Lashing eyes for securing the load and the fastening nets
Max. load 350 kg

Other fasteners

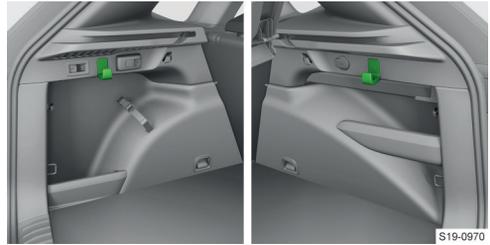


- A** Net on the boot cover
Max. load 1.5 kg
- B** Hook for securing the load to the eyelet of the TOP TETHER system
Max. load 5 kg
- C** Cargo elements
Max. load 8 kg

A storage compartment for the cargo elements is located under the floor covering in the boot.

- › Fold up the cargo element and fasten it to the floor covering in the boot.

Bag hooks in the boot



The maximum load for the hook is 7.5 kg.

Cargo elements in the luggage compartment



The maximum load for the Cargoelements is 8 kg.

Storage net



S19-0972

The maximum permissible load for the net is 1.5 kg.

Hook on the eyelet of the TOP TETHER system

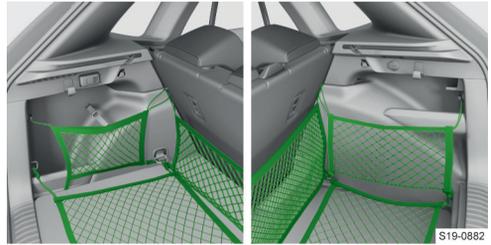


S19-0969

The maximum load for the hook is 5 kg.

Fastening nets

Overview



S19-0882

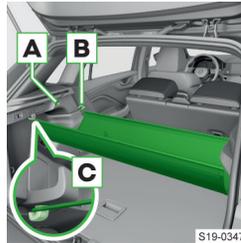
The maximum load of the respective fastening nets is 1.5 kg.

Storage pocket

Operation

The maximum load of the other fastening nets is 3.5 kg.

Suspension



S19-0347

› Hang the storage bag at the attachment points **A**, **B** or **C**.

ⓘ NOTICE

› Before hanging the storage bag, remove the hook from the eyelet of the TOP TETHER system.

Folding



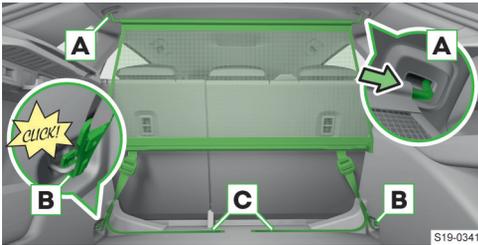
S20-0077

› Place the rear bar against the front bar and secure it with the retaining tab.

Net partition

Attach the net partition

Attach at the back



- › Place the crossbar in the supports **A**.
- › Snap the carabiners **B** into the lashing eyes.
- › Pull the straps firmly at the free ends **C**.

Fasten in the front

The procedure is analogous to the process behind.

The lashing eyes for the carabiner are located under the central body pillars.

Loosening

Loosening takes place in the reverse order to fixing.

Double-sided floor covering

Overview

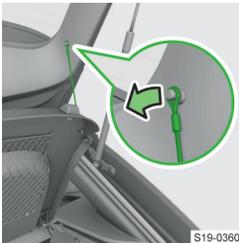
Depending on the equipment, the vehicle may be equipped with a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable.

Rigid boot cover

Removing and inserting

The maximum load of the other fastening nets is 1 kg.

Removing



- › Unhook the straps.



Remove the cover by pulling it quickly.

The cover is released by slowly pulling on the floor of the boot.

Inserting

- › Insert the cover until it clicks into place.
- › Hook in the retaining straps.

Store the cover behind the rear seats



- › Hook the cover behind the rear seats.

Variable loading floor in the boot

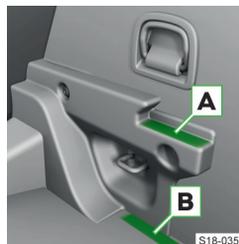
Setting the position

The maximum load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

Set the variable loading floor to the upper or lower position



- › Lift the variable load floor and pull it towards you.



- › To set in the upper position, place the variable loading floor in the front area on area **A**.
- › To set in the lower position, place the variable loading floor in the front area on space **B**.



- › Press the variable loading floor forward and hang up.

Fasten the raised variable loading floor in the upper position



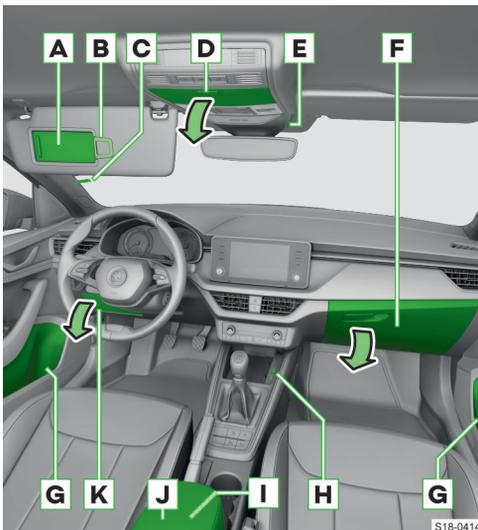
- › Secure the raised variable loading floor with the help of hinged corners in areas **A**.

Removing and inserting

- › Lift the variable loading floor up to a distance of about 15 cm below the boot cover and then remove it.
- › Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Interior equipment front

Overview



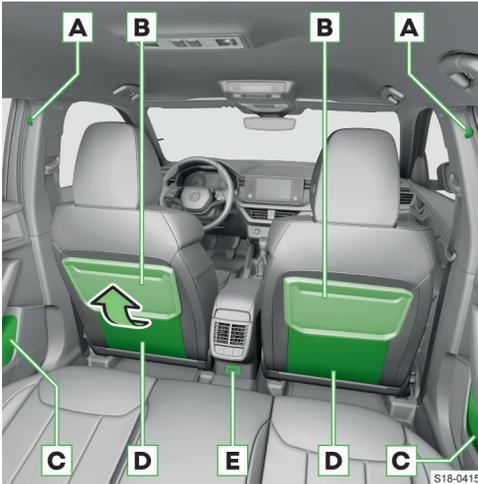
- A** Make up mirror
- B** Ticket holder
- C** Car park ticket holder
- D** Glasses compartment
 - Max. load 0.25 kg
 - › To open, press the button.
- E** USB connection
 - The USB connection is for charging only.
- F** Storage tray
 - Max. load 3 kg
 - › Pull the handle to open the compartment.
- G** Storage tray
 - ▶ Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1.5 l
 - ▶ Storage compartment for the waste container
 - ▶ Storage compartment for the reflective vest
- H** USB-connections
 - The USB connections can be used for charging and to transfer data.
- I** 12 volt socket
- J** Openable and adjustable armrest with storage compartment
 - In the lower part of the armrest, there is a card holder.
 - › Pull the handle to open the compartment.
- K** Storage tray
 - Max. load 0.5 kg
 - › Pull on the handle to open.

NOTICE

- ▶ Do not leave any heat-sensitive objects in the spectacle compartment **D**.

Interior equipment rear

Overview



- A** Coat hook
Max. load 2 kg
- B** Folding table
- C** Storage tray
 - ▶ Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 0.5 l
 - ▶ Storage compartment for the reflective vest
- D** Storage pocket
- E** USB-connections
The USB connections are for charging only.

⚠ WARNING

- ▶ Only hang light clothing on the hooks. Do not leave heavy and sharp objects in the pockets of the clothing.
- ▶ Do not use hangers to hang clothes.

Car park ticket holder



Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the front door



The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 1.5 l.

Bottle tray in the storage compartment of the rear door



The tray is suitable for bottles with a max. size of 0.5 l.



The USB connections can be used for charging and for data transfer.

USB-connections



The USB connection is for charging only.



The USB connections are for charging only.

Hook on the centre body pillar



The maximum load for the hook is 2 kg.

⚠ WARNING

- ▶ Only hang light clothing on the hooks. Do not leave heavy and sharp objects in the pockets of the clothing.
- ▶ Do not use hangers to hang clothes.

Glasses compartment

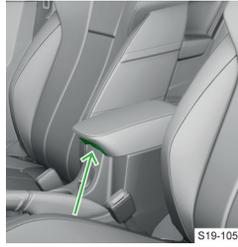


The maximum load for the compartment is 0.25 kg.

① NOTICE

- ▶ Do not leave heat-sensitive objects behind in the glasses compartment.

Card holder on the armrest



Storage compartment under the front seat

Opening the storage compartment



The maximum permissible load for the storage compartment is 1.5 kg.

Storage compartment for an umbrella

Overview



① NOTICE

Risk of damage to the bodywork and the interior trim of the vehicle!

- ▶ In the storage compartment, only insert the umbrella from the ŠKODA original accessories.
- ▶ Always push the umbrella into the storage compartment as far as it will go.

Phonebox

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burns during charging.

- ▶ The phone may get warm, remove it carefully from the storage compartment.
- ▶ Do not leave any metal objects in the compartment under the phone. If there is a metallic object in the storage compartment, which has become hot, remove the phone and let it cool down in the storage compartment!

Functionality

Phonebox functions

- ▶ Wireless charging of phones.
- ▶ Amplification of the telephone signal (only valid for some countries).

The Phonebox is located in the storage compartment in the centre console at the front.

Insert a telephone with a maximum size of 160x80 mm into the storage compartment.

Charging Indicator

Applies to Infotainment Swing and Bolero.

The state of charge is indicated by the colour of the Φ symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

- ▶ White - the phone is in the storage compartment, is detected and is charging.
- ▶ Red - the phone is in the storage compartment, is detected, but cannot be charged.
- ▶ No icon displayed - the function is not available.

Charging Indicator

Applies to Infotainment Amundsen.

The state of charge is indicated by the colour of the Φ symbol in the status bar on the Infotainment screen.

- ▶ White - the phone is in the storage compartment, is detected and is charging.
- ▶ Grey - the phone is not in the storage compartment/does not support wireless charging/is fully charged.
- ▶ Red - the phone is in the storage compartment, is detected, but cannot be charged.
- ▶ No icon displayed - the function is not available.

Recommendations for optimal function

- ▶ The phone is positioned with the screen facing up.
- ▶ Insert the phone without the protective case.
- ▶ Position the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad.

Operating conditions

Conditions for wireless charging

- ✓ The ignition is switched on.
- ✓ The phone supports the Qi standard.
- ✓ There is no object between the pad and the phone.

Troubleshooting

A message has been displayed on the Infotainment screen indicating that the mobile phone cannot be charged.

- ▶ Check that there is no object between the support and the phone to be charged. If this is the case, remove the phone and the item. Place the phone centrally on the phone symbol on the pad again.
- ▶ Check that the position of the phone to be charged has not changed. If this is the case, remove the phone and put it back in the centre of the phone symbol on the pad.

Cup holder

Overview

Cup holder at the front



S18-0371

In the front holder area, a bottle can be opened with one hand.

- ▶ Press the bottle into the holder and unscrew the cap.

Rear cup holder



S18-0257

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of scalding!

- ▶ Never put hot beverage containers in the drinks holder.

⚠ NOTICE

Danger of damage to the electrical system and the panels from spilled drinks.

Cup holder Easy Open



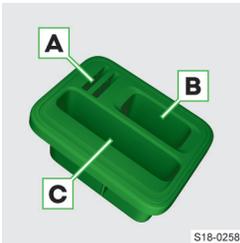
S20-0311

In the front holder area, a bottle can be opened with one hand.

Multimedia holder

Overview

The multimedia holder is inserted in the cup holder.



S18-0258

- A** Storage compartment for coins
- B** Storage compartment for the vehicle key
- C** Storage compartment for a mobile phone

Waste container

Replace bags



S18-0255

Ashtray and cigarette lighter

What you should be mindful of

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of burning or fire!

- ▶ Do not use the ashtray for storing hot or burning objects.
- ▶ Handle the lighter carefully.

Operation

The ashtray is inserted in the cup holder.

Open the ashtray



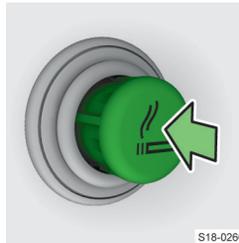
S18-0264

Remove the lid



S18-0265

Cigarette lighter



S18-0266

- ▶ Push in the lighter.
- ▶ Wait until the glowing lighter pops back out.
- ▶ Remove the lighter and use.
- ▶ Push the lighter back in.

The socket of the cigarette lighter serves as a 12-Volt socket.

Folding table

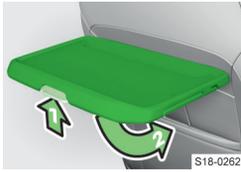
Operation

Fold up the table



S20-0250

- ▶ Press the safety button and fold the table up to the desired position.

Unfold the table

- ▶ Press the safety button and unfold the table.

Slide out the cup holder

The maximum load for the table is 8.5 kg.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- ▶ While driving, the table must be in the folded-down position.

12-Volt power socket**Operating conditions****① NOTICE**

Risk of damage to the electrical system of the vehicle!

- ▶ Use the sockets only for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts.

① NOTICE

Danger of damage to the connected consumers!

- ▶ Switch off the consumers before switching the ignition on or off and before starting the engine.

Roof rack and hitch**Roof rack****Technical data**

The maximum weight of the load incl. roof rack is 75 kg.

Swivelling hitch**What you should be mindful of**

Applies to natural gas vehicles.

⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed or unsuitable tow hitch can damage the natural gas reservoir of the vehicle in an accident and thus deepen the consequences of the accident or cause fatal injuries.

- ▶ Due to the specific structure of the vehicles with natural gas reservoirs, we recommend using only the original ŠKODA tow hitch. With these accessories, ŠKODA stands for safety, reliability and suitability for this vehicle type.
- ▶ We recommend that all related assembly work be carried out by ŠKODA service partners.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Do not manipulate the switch for swinging the tow bar in and out while a trailer or another accessory is coupled to the tow bar. The tow bar could be unlocked.

⚠ CAUTION

Risk of injury!

- ▶ Handle the trailer coupling carefully.
- ▶ When swinging out the tow bar, do not stand in the middle area of the rear bumper.

① NOTICE

Risk of damage to the trailer coupling!

- ▶ When not using the towing device, swing the tow bar under the bumper.

Tow bar: swivel out/in**Swing out the tow bar**

- ▶ Pull on the switch. The tow bar swings out. The indicator light → inside the switch illuminates.

180 Roof rack and hitch › Swivelling hitch



- › Press the tow bar until it audibly clicks into place.

Check latching: the indicator light → within the switch lights up.

S18-0297

Swivel tow bar

① NOTICE

- ▶ No trailer or any other accessory can be connected to the tow bar.
- ▶ A socket or adapter may not be plugged into the socket.



- › Pull on the switch. The tow bar is unlocked. The indicator light → inside the switch illuminates.

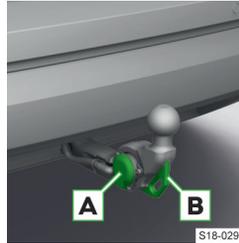
S18-0296



- › Swing in the tow bar under the bumper until it audibly clicks into place.

Check latching: the indicator light → within the switch lights up.

S18-0298



- › Plug the electrical trailer plug into the socket **A**.
- › Hook the tear-off rope of the trailer onto the safety eye **B**. The tear-off rope must sag against the vehicle in all trailer positions.

S18-0299

Uncoupling

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Power supply of the trailer power network

In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer, the trailer is powered by the vehicle.

① NOTICE

Risk of damage to the vehicle electronics!
The total power consumption of all consumers connected to the trailer power supply must not exceed 350 watts.

Troubleshooting

Trailer coupling error

The indicator light → inside the switch does not light up or flash, or the tow bar does not lock into place.

- › Do not use the trailer coupling.
- › Seek the help of a specialist garage.

Tow bar not locked

 illuminates

- › Engage the tow bar.

Coupling or uncoupling a trailer or accessory

The following information describes the procedure for coupling and uncoupling a trailer. The information also refers to another accessory, e.g. a bike carrier.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Do not use the safety eye for towing.
- ▶ Distribute and fix the load correctly.

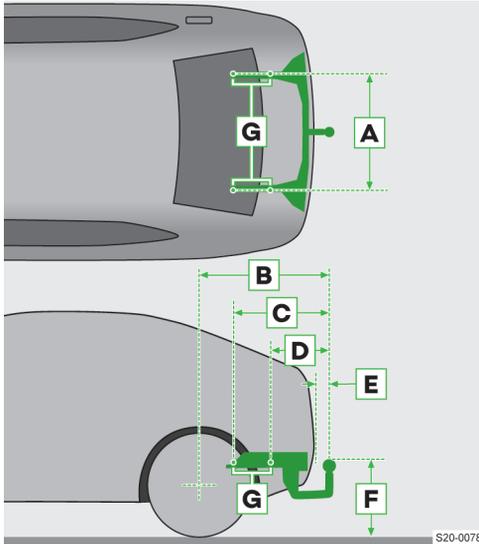
[i] The trailer has a 13-pin electrical socket. If the trailer has a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding adapter from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Coupling

- › Swing out the tow bar.
- › Put the trailer drawbar onto the ball head.

Technical data

Tow hitch attachment points



- A** Distance of the attachment points
- B** Length of the rear overhang to the centre of the ball head
- C** Distance of the front attachment point to the centre of the ball head
- D** Distance of the rear attachment point to the centre of the ball head
- E** Distance of the rear bumper to the centre of the ball head (according to the ECE-55 standard)
- F** Distance from the centre of the ball head to the road (according to the standard ECE-55)
- G** Fastening points on the body

In mm	
A	1032.8
B	829.8
C	512.1
D	385.8
E	min. 65
F	350-420

Maximum vertical load for trailer operation

The maximum vertical load for trailer operation depends on the engine type and the vehicle equipment.

The valid specification for your vehicle can be found in the technical vehicle documentation, (e.g. vehicle approval documentation, the COC document) or at a ŠKODA partner.

Other information (e.g. on the nameplate of the trailer device) merely provides information on the test values of the device.

Support load with mounted accessories

When using the accessories (e.g. bicycle carrier), the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The maximum length of the mounted accessories (from the ball of the towing device) may not exceed 70 cm.

The permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including its load corresponds to the maximum vertical load for trailer operation; the value can be found in the vehicle registration documentation.

If the maximum load in trailer operation is more than 75 kg, then the permissible total weight of the mounted accessories including their load must not exceed 75 kg.

This value applies if the centre of gravity is at a distance of no more than 30 cm from the towing device ball head.

If the distance of the centre gravity of the load to the ball head of the towing device is greater than 30 cm, then the max. permissible total weight of the accessory, including its load, decreases (e.g. at a distance of 60 cm from the ball head, the permissible weight decreases by half).

If the distance between the centre of gravity of the load and the ball head of the towing hitch is 70 cm, the permissible total weight of the accessories including their load is reduced to 0 kg.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Do not exceed the maximum vertical load.
- ▶ The permissible trailer load and the weight of another accessory, e.g. of the bike carrier, is not to be exceeded.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the trailer and the vehicle itself!

- ▶ When using the accessory (e.g. bicycle carrier), observe the maximum length and the permissible total weight of the accessory incl.

Maintaining and cleaning

Service events

service intervals

Compliance with service intervals is crucial for the life and value of the vehicle.

You will be notified of the due date for service with the symbol  and the corresponding message on the display of the instrument cluster.

The specialist garage will inform you of the type of service interval, the option of changing this and the scope of service.

 All services and the replacement or refilling of operating fluids are chargeable to the customer, even during the warranty period, unless the ŠKODA AUTO warranty conditions or other binding agreements determine otherwise.

Proof of service

A specialist garage stores the proof of service in the information system called Digital Service Plan.

The proof of service can be printed out.

Displaying the service due date in the Infotainment system

› In Infotainment, select the following menu:

CAR ›  › Menu item for the Service

Or:

MENU ›  ›  › Menu item for the Service

Resetting information

We recommend that you do not reset the information regarding service events on your own. It can lead to incorrect setting of the service intervals and thus also to possible faults in the vehicle.

For vehicles with a variable service interval, new service interval values calculated according to the previous operating conditions will be displayed after the oil change service indicator is reset. These values will then continue to be adjusted according to the current operating conditions.

Service work, adjustments and technical changes

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO must be observed when carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to the vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We advise only using ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety

and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.

ŠKODA Service partner

All ŠKODA service partners work according to the instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO. Service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep the vehicle in a good technical condition.

We therefore advise having all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to the vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA original parts

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts comply wholly with ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA original accessories

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. With these accessories, ŠKODA AUTO stands for safety, reliability and the suitability for your vehicle type.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements.

Spoiler

WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Only use the original spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the original spoiler on the boot lid.
- ▶ The original spoiler on the front bumper cannot be left on its own without the spoiler on the luggage compartment lid or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the luggage compartment lid.
- ▶ We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.

Component protection

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection. This component protection ensures the functional limitation of these components in a

non-legitimate installation in another vehicle (e.g. after a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Interior

What you should be mindful of

ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- ▶ Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.

Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® / Suedia / material

ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Remove impurities as soon as possible.
- ▶ Do not use solvents, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® and Suedia suede seat upholstery.
- ▶ Make sure that natural leather is not moistened when cleaning and that no water seeps into the seams.
- ▶ Do not clean the roof cladding with a brush.

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of fading to the cover fabric!

- ▶ If necessary, do not leave the covers for long periods in the blazing sun.

I

- ▶ During use, the leather and Alcantara®- and Suedia and materials may show minor changes (e.g. folds or discolouration). This does not constitute a material defect.
- ▶ Some clothing fabrics, e.g. dark denim, sometimes do not have sufficient colour fastness. As a result, discolouration that is clearly visible on the seat upholstery can occur. This is not a defect in the fabric.
- ▶ Sharp-edged zippers, rivets, clamps and similar garments can damage the upholstery in the vehicle. Such damages cannot be subsequently recognised as a justified complaint.

Plastic parts

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damaging the dash panel!

- ▶ Do not attach fragrances and air fresheners to the dash panel.

Windows

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the filaments or the glass antenna!

- ▶ Do not stick stickers on the heating filaments.

- ▶ Do not use sharp objects (such as pot scrapers, etc.) to clean the windows.

Covers on electrically heated seats

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damaging the heating system!

- ▶ Do not clean the seats with water or other liquids.
- ▶ Do not dry the seats by switching on the heating.

Seat belts

ⓘ NOTICE

Risk of damage to the seat belts!

- ▶ Do not dry clean the seat belts.
- ▶ Allow cleaned belts to dry before rolling up.

Instructions for cleaning

Natural leather / Faux leather / Alcantara® / Suedia / material

- ▶ Remove dust and dirt on the surface with a vacuum cleaner.
- ▶ Remove fresh impurities with water, slightly moistened cotton cloth or woollen cloth; if necessary, use a mild soap solution ¹⁾ and wipe with a dry cloth.
- ▶ Remove stubborn stains with a suitable cleaning agent.
- ▶ For regular care of natural leather, use the equipment provided for this purpose. After each clean, use a care cream with light protection and impregnation effect.
- ▶ When looking after Alcantara®, Suedia and fabric surfaces, remove stubborn hair with a cleaning brush. Remove pills from materials with a brush.

Plastic parts

- ▶ Remove impurities with water, slightly moistened cloth or sponge with a suitable cleaning agent if necessary.

Windows

- ▶ Remove impurities with clean water and dry with a cloth provided for this purpose.

Infotainment screen

- ▶ Remove any impurities on the screen using the cleaning agents provided.

ⓘ NOTICE

Danger of screen damage!

- ▶ When removing dirt, do not press on the screen.

Covers on electrically heated seats

- ▶ Remove impurities with a suitable cleaning agent.

¹⁾ A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

Seat belts

- › Remove impurities with a soft cloth and mild soap solution.¹⁾

Exterior**What you should be mindful of****⚠ WARNING**

Risk of accident!

After washing the vehicle, the functionality of the brake system may be affected by moisture and, in winter, by ice.

- ▶ Dry and clean the brakes by braking several times.

① NOTICE

- ▶ Bird droppings, insect residues, litter and sea salt residues, overflowed fuel, AdBlue® etc. are to be removed as soon as possible.
- ▶ Do not use rough sponges, scourers or similar to remove dirt.
- ▶ Use cleaning agents intended for cleaning and care of the individual materials.
- ▶ Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents.
- ▶ Do not polish the vehicle in a dusty environment.

① NOTICE

AdBlue® picks up some materials, e.g. paint and plastics.

- ▶ Clean the affected area with a damp cloth and cold water.
- ▶ Remove any dried solution with warm water and a sponge.

① NOTICE

- ▶ Paint damage should be repaired as soon as possible.
- ▶ Do not treat matt lacquered parts with polish or hard wax.
- ▶ Do not polish foils.
- ▶ We recommend treating door seals and window guides with the appropriate tools from ŠKODA original accessories. These ensure that the protective lacquer layer of the seals and window guides is not attacked.
- ▶ Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to clean the rear view camera.

Before driving through a car wash

- › Observe the usual specifications of the car wash, e.g. close all windows, fold the mirrors, etc.
- › Move the windscreen wiper lever to position **OFF** to adjust.

- › If there are special attachments on your vehicle, observe the instructions of the car wash operator.

① NOTICE

In vehicles with an electric luggage compartment lid, this can open automatically due to the pressure of the washing brushes.

- ▶ Lock the vehicle, e.g. with the central lock button.

After washing with a wax preservation

- › Wipe off the windscreen wiper blades with a dry cloth.

Wash with a pressure washer**① NOTICE**

- ▶ Follow the operating instructions for the high-pressure cleaner, in particular the instructions relating to the pressure and the spray distance to the vehicle surface.
- ▶ Do not direct the water jet directly at the following vehicle parts
 - ▶ Films
 - ▶ Lock cylinder
 - ▶ Columns on the vehicle
 - ▶ Trailer connection
 - ▶ Swivelling ball bar
 - ▶ Camera lenses and sensors
 - ▶ Plastic, chromed and anodised parts

Remove snow and ice**① NOTICE**

- ▶ Remove snow and ice with a plastic scraper or a suitable deicing agent.
- ▶ Clean the cameras with a hand brush.
- ▶ Only move the scraper in one direction.
- ▶ Do not use scratchers or other sharp objects for foils.
- ▶ Do not remove snow and ice with hot or warm water.
- ▶ Do not remove snow and ice from surfaces with coarse dirt.

Instructions for cleaning**Handwash**

- › Wash the vehicle from top to bottom with a soft sponge or wash glove and plenty of water, if necessary with additional suitable cleaning agents.
- › For foils and headlights, use a mild soap solution that contains two tablespoons of white neutral soap to one litre of lukewarm water.
- › Use a glass cleaner for the windscreen wiper blades.

¹⁾ A mild soap solution consisting of 2 tablespoons of white neutral soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

- › Wash the cameras with clean water and dry with a suitable clean wipe.

ⓘ NOTICE

- ▶ Wash out the sponge or wash mitt regularly.
- ▶ Use a different sponge for wheels, sills and the lower part of the vehicle than that used for the other vehicle parts.
- ▶ Do not wash the vehicle in the blazing sun.
- ▶ Do not dry the headlights or use sharp objects.
- ▶ Do not put pressure on the bodywork when washing.
- ▶ The temperature of the washing water may be a max. 60 °C.

After hand washing

- › Rinse the vehicle and wipe it with a suitable clean cloth.

Vehicle paint

- › Preserve the varnish at least twice a year with hard wax.
- › Use a polish for matt lacquers.

Films

Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal: this is not an error.

The following factors have a negative effect on the life or colour fastness of the films:

- ▶ Sun rays
- ▶ moisture
- ▶ Air pollution
- ▶ Stones, e.g. due to the rebound of the cargo during transport on the roof rack

Protection of hollow spaces

Corrosion-prone cavities of the vehicle are permanently protected by preservative wax at the factory.

- › Remove spilled wax with a plastic scraper, clean stains with mineral spirits.

Underseal

The underside is permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

- › Have the protective coating checked by a specialist garage before starting and at the end of the cold season.

Wheels

- › After washing, preserve the wheels with suitable means.

⚠ WARNING

Risk of an accident!

- ▶ Severe dirt on the wheels can result in the wheels unbalancing.

Car jack

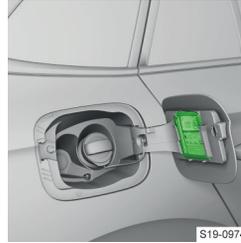
- › If necessary, treat moving parts with suitable grease.

Tow hitch

- › Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Ice scraper

On the fuel filler flap



S19-0974

Technical data and specifications

Requirements for the technical data

The emission standard, information on fuel consumption and other information pertaining to your vehicle can be found listed in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity (in the so-called COC Document).

The information listed was determined in accordance with rules and under conditions that are stipulated by legal or technical regulations.

This and other information about your vehicle and the declaration of conformity can be obtained from a ŠKODA Partner.

The details in the technical vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity take precedence over the information in this Owner's Manual. These specifications and values apply to your vehicle in its condition and configuration at the time of delivery from the manufacturer. Retrofitting an accessory can have a negative impact on this information and values, in particular the values regarding fuel consumption and carbon dioxide (CO₂), which are specified in the vehicle documentation and in the declaration of conformity.

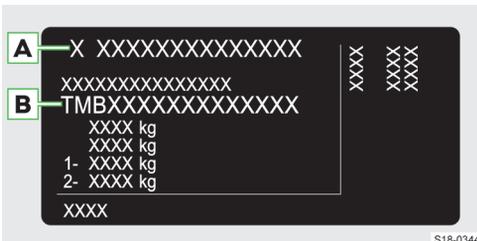
The performance values listed were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

Vehicle identification data

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is found at the following locations:

- ▶ Directly in the engine compartment on the suspension turret
- ▶ On a plate under the windscreen in the lower left corner
- ▶ On the type plate at the bottom of the middle body pillar of the vehicle



Type plate

- A** Vehicle manufacturers
- B** Vehicle identification number (VIN)

VIN display

The display of the VIN takes place in the infotainment in the following menu item:

CAR > > Menu item for the Service

Or:

MENU > > > Menu item for the Service

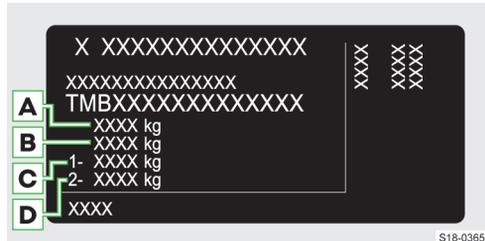
Engine number

The engine number is embossed on the engine block.

Maximum permissible weights

The maximum permissible weights are listed on the nameplate.

The type plate is located at the bottom of the middle body pillar of the vehicle.



- A** Maximum permissible gross weight
- B** Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)
- C** Maximum permissible front axle load
- D** Maximum permissible rear axle load

Maximum permissible towed weight

The specified value is valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as the height increases, as does the ability to climb.

Therefore, for every additional 1,000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10 %.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

Payloads

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following components:

- ▶ The weight of the passenger
- ▶ The weight of all luggage and other loads
- ▶ The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system

- ▶ The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight
- ▶ Trailer bearing load for trailer towing » page 181

⚠ WARNING

- Risk of accident and danger of vehicle damage!
- ▶ Do not exceed the specified values for the maximum permissible weights.

Operating weight

Information about the operating weight

The specification corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without additional weight-increasing equipment. This includes 75 kg driver's weight, the weight of the operating fluids and the on-board tool kit and a fuel tank filled to min. 90%.

Operating weight

Engine type	Gearbox	Operating weight (kg)
1.0 l/66 kW TSI G-TEC	Manual gearbox	1335
1.0 l/70 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1214/1221 ^{a)}
1.0 l/81 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1237
	DSG ^{b)}	1256
1.0 l/85 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1231
	DSG ^{b)}	1251
1.5 l/110 kW TSI	Manual gearbox	1261
	DSG ^{b)}	1277
1.6 l/81 kW MPI	Manual gearbox	1216
	Automatic gearbox	1241
1.6 l/70 kW TDI CR	Manual gearbox	1332
1.6 l/85 kW TDI CR	Manual gearbox	1336
	DSG ^{b)}	1364

^{a)} Applies to cars with the EU6AP emission standard.
^{b)} Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

- I** Ask for the exact vehicle weight in a specialist garage.

Vehicle dimensions

Dimensions

Specification	Value (in mm)
Vehicle height	1527 ^{a)} /1531
Vehicle width with folded-in mirrors	1793
Vehicle width with folded-out mirrors	1988
Ground clearance of the vehicle	186 ^{a)} /188
Vehicle length	4241

^{a)} Applies to vehicles with a 1.0l/66 kW TSI G-TEC engine.

Engine specifications

1.0 I/66 kW TSI G-TEC engine

Output (kW at rpm)	66/4000-5500
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	160/1800-3800
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	3/999
Gearbox	Manual gearbox
Maximum speed (km/h)	181
With specified gear engaged	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	12.3

1.0 I/70 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	70/5000-5500
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	175/1600-3500 ^{a)} (2000-3500)
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	3/999
Gearbox	Manual gearbox
Maximum speed (km/h)	183
With specified gear engaged	4/5 ^{a)}
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.1/11.2 ^{a)}

^{a)} Applies to cars with the EU6AP emission standard.

1.0 I/81 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	81/5500	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	200/2000-3000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	3/999	
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	DSG ^{a)}
Maximum speed (km/h)	194	193
With specified gear engaged	5	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.2	10.2

^{a)} Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

1.0 I/85 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	85/5000-5500	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	200/2000-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	3/999	
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	DSG ^{a)}
Maximum speed (km/h)	195	194
With specified gear engaged	5	6
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.9	9.9

^{a)} Automatic dual-clutch transmission.

1.5 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	110/5000-6000	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1500-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	4/1498	
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	DSG ^{a)}
Maximum speed (km/h)	215	211/215 ^{b)}
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.0	8.3
^{a)} Automatic dual-clutch transmission.		
^{b)} Applies to cars with the EU6AP emission standard.		

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW at rpm)	81/5800	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	155/3800-4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	4/1598	
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	Automatic gearbox
Maximum speed (km/h)	187	182
With specified gear engaged	5	5
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.8	11.9

1.6 l/70 kW TDI CR engine

Power (kW at 1/min)	70/2750-4500	
Highest torque (Nm at 1/min)	250/1500-2500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	4/1598	
Transmission	Manual gearbox	
Maximum speed (km/h)	179	
With specified gear engaged	4	
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.7	

1.6 l/85 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW at rpm)	85/3250-4000	
Highest torque (Nm at rpm)	250/1500-3250	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm ³)	4/1598	
Gearbox	Manual gearbox	DSG ^{a)}
Maximum speed (km/h)	195	194
With specified gear engaged	6	7
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.2	10.3
^{a)} Automatic dual-clutch transmission.		

Accident data recorder (Event Data Recorder)

The vehicle is equipped with an accident data recorder, hereinafter called as "EDR". The purpose of the EDR lies in the data recording during a traffic ac-

cident or another extraordinary traffic situation, hereinafter called as "accident".

Data is only recorded in the event of an accident in which the restraint systems are triggered.

The EDR records the accident in a short time (approximately 10 s), by showing the following information, for example:

- ▶ The function of certain systems in the vehicle.
- ▶ The seat belt status of the driver and front passenger.
- ▶ The actuation of the brake and accelerator pedals.
- ▶ The speed of the vehicle at the time of the accident.

The recorded data support the analysis of how the vehicle systems behaved shortly before, during and shortly after the accident. This enables them to clarify the circumstances of the accident.

The data relating to assist systems in the vehicle is also recorded. Whether for instance the affected systems were switched on or off at the corresponding time, whether they were only partially available or were inactive. There is also the possibility of tracking whether these vehicle functions controlled, accelerated or decelerated the vehicle during the accident. Depending on the equipment, these functions are, e.g.:

- ▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).
- ▶ Lane Assist (Lane Assist).
- ▶ Park Assist.
- ▶ Emergency braking function (Front Assist).

Under normal driving conditions, data is not recorded. There is no audio or video recording from the vehicle interior or surroundings. Personal data such as name, gender, age or place where the accident occurred is not stored in the EDR. However, third parties such as law enforcement authorities may use certain resources to connect EDR content to other data sources, and therefore deduce the identification of some of the people involved in the accident when investigating the causes of the accident.

For reading the EDR-Data, special equipment is required and the ignition switched on.

ŠKODA AUTO will not read or otherwise process any accident data from the EDR without the approval of the vehicle owner or other person authorised for use of the vehicle. Exceptions are specified in the contractual arrangements, or these are subject to generally binding regulations.

Due to legal requirements, ŠKODA AUTO is required to monitor the quality and safety of its products, meaning that it is only entitled to use data from the EDR to monitor the product on the market, for further research and development, and to improve the quality of the vehicle's safety systems. For the purpose of research and development, ŠKODA AUTO will also make data available to third parties. This is done exclusively in anonymous form, i.e. without any connection to the specific vehicle, the vehicle owner or any other authorised user.

Personal data

Personal customer data is collected, processed and used by ŠKODA AUTO in accordance with the provisions of the generally binding legal provisions in the area of personal data protection.

The current declaration on the protection of personal data is displayed using the following link or by reading the QR code:

<https://www.skoda-auto.com/other/personal-data>



Information about the radio systems in the vehicle

Your vehicle has various radio systems.

Manufacturers of this radio equipment declare that this equipment complies with the requirements of **Directive 2014/53 / EU** and the **Technical Regulation on Radio Equipment, approved by the Decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine of 25 May 2017 no. 355**.

Information about **Directive 2014/53 / EU** on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to the marketing of radio equipment, **Technical regulation on radio equipment, approved by the decision of the Cabinet of Ministers of Ukraine of May 25, 2017 No. 355** as well as regarding **declaration of conformity**, can be viewed on ŠKODA web pages using the following link or by scanning the QR-code:

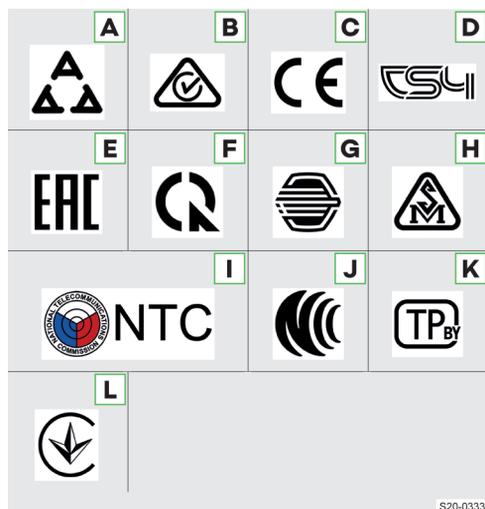
<https://www.skoda-auto.com/services/red-doc>



After this, proceed as follows:

1. Select the desired region.
2. Select Download Declaration of conformity against the desired model, to receive the certificates.

Examples of labelling of radio systems



S20-0333

- A** Serbia
- B** Australia and New Zealand
- C** Europe (countries that approve radio equipment as per EU guidelines)
- D** Armenia
- E** Russia
- F** Vietnam
- G** Mongolia
- H** Moldova
- I** Philippines
- J** Taiwan
- K** Belarus
- L** Ukraine

Rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA warranties

Rights arising from defective performance

Your ŠKODA Partner, as a seller, is liable to you for material defects in your new ŠKODA vehicle, ŠKODA Genuine Parts and ŠKODA Genuine Accessories, in accordance with the legal requirements and the purchase contract.

The buyer is entitled to assert the rights arising from defective performance with the responsible ŠKODA partner from the time of vehicle handover. The date of the vehicle handover and the vehicle identification number (VIN) are properly documented in the "Vehicle delivery documentation" chapter in this Owner's Manual.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars

As well as the legal rights arising from defective performance, ŠKODA AUTO grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as the "ŠKODA Warranty"), according to the conditions described below.

Under the ŠKODA Warranty, the company ŠKODA AUTO shall provide the following services¹⁾:

- ▶ Free repair of damage due to a defect that occurs in your vehicle within two years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- ▶ Free repair of damage due to paintwork flaws that occur on your vehicle within three years of the start of the ŠKODA Warranty.
- ▶ Free repair of rust corrosion on the body, which occurs on your vehicle within twelve years of the start of the warranty. In terms of rust corrosion on the body, the ŠKODA Warranty shall cover only rust corrosion through body panels from the inside to the outside.

The start of the ŠKODA Warranty is the day on which the new car is handed over for use by a ŠKODA partner to the first buyer who is not a ŠKODA Partner²⁾.

The ŠKODA Partner enters this date into the corresponding systems of the manufacturer. Any one ŠKODA Partner can notify you of this date on request.

Fault rectification under the ŠKODA Warranty can be carried out by means of a replacement or repair of the defective parts. The ŠKODA Service Partner decides about the type of vehicle repair. The fault rectification takes place in accordance with the availability of the ŠKODA Service Partners and within a reasonable period of time. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement car for the duration of repair and compensation.

- ¹⁾ Based on the requirements of generally binding legal regulations or country-specific market requirements, the ŠKODA partner or importer can provide a warranty beyond the scope of the stated ŠKODA Warranty. This local warranty extends the scope of performance in accordance with the specific warranty conditions of ŠKODA partners or importers.
- ²⁾ Due to the requirements of the generally binding country-specific regulations, the date of first registration can be given instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

The ŠKODA Warranty can be claimed at any ŠKODA Service Partner.

There are no claims under the ŠKODA Warranty if vehicle damage has occurred in causal connection with one of the following circumstances:

- ▶ The service work was not carried out on time and professionally according to the provisions of ŠKODA AUTO, or its execution was not proven by the customer when asserting claims under the ŠKODA Warranty.
- ▶ Damage has not been reported immediately to a specialist company or has not been properly remedied.
- ▶ Damage refers to parts that are subject to natural wear, such as tyres, spark plugs, wiper blades, brake pads and brake discs, clutch, bulbs, synchronizer rings, batteries, etc.
- ▶ External impact or influences (e.g. accident, hail, flood, fire etc.).
- ▶ Installation, connection of parts or accessories, other adaptation or technical modification of the vehicle not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. Tuning).
- ▶ Unauthorized use, improper handling (e.g. use in motor sport competitions or overloading), improper care or unauthorized maintenance.
- ▶ Non-compliance with provisions in the Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions.

The customer shall prove the lack of causation.

The present ŠKODA Warranty shall not affect the purchaser's statutory rights arising from unsatisfactory performance in respect of the seller of the vehicle and possible claims arising from product liability laws.

ŠKODA Mobility warranty

The Mobility Warranty provides you with a sense of certainty for journeys in your vehicle.

If your vehicle is left on the road due to an unexpected fault, we can provide services to keep you moving as part of the mobility guarantee, including the following: technical assistance on the phone, breakdown assistance at the breakdown location, start-up on site, and towing to the ŠKODA service partner, if necessary.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, then the ŠKODA Service Partner may, if necessary, arrange additional subsequent services, such as replacement transport (bus, train, etc.), the provision of a replacement vehicle, and the like.

Specific claims for free provision of services under the ŠKODA Mobility Warranty only exist if your vehicle has remained in a causal connection with a defect which is to be remedied on the basis of fulfilment under the ŠKODA Warranty.

Check the conditions for provision of the Mobility Warranty for your vehicle with your ŠKODA Partner. They will also inform you of the detailed terms and conditions of the Mobility Warranty in relation to your vehicle. In the event that your vehicle is not covered by a mobility warranty, he will inform you of the possibilities for subsequent conclusion.

Optional ŠKODA Extended Warranty

If you also purchased a ŠKODA Extended Warranty when purchasing your new car, ŠKODA AUTO will provide you with a free repair of vehicle damage caused by a defect in the vehicle during the warranty period.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty for your vehicle is valid for the agreed period or until the agreed mileage limit is reached, whichever comes first.

For the assessment of claims from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty, the conditions of the ŠKODA warranty described above apply to the appropriate extent.

The fault rectification under the ŠKODA Extended Warranty can only be carried out by replacement or repair of the defective parts, whereby the ŠKODA service partner decides on the type of vehicle repair. The fault rectification takes place in accordance with the availability of the ŠKODA Service Partners and within a reasonable period of time.

There shall in any case be no entitlement to further claims from the ŠKODA Extended Warranty. In particular, no claim for replacement, no right of withdrawal, no claim to purchase price reduction, or provision of a replacement car for the duration of repair and compensation.

The previously mentioned paint warranty and the warranty against rust perforation are unaffected by the ŠKODA extended warranty.

The ŠKODA Extended Warranty does not apply to exterior and interior foils.

Your ŠKODA partner will provide you with information about the detailed conditions of the ŠKODA Extended Warranty.

[i] The ŠKODA Mobility Warranty and the ŠKODA Extended Warranty are only available in some countries.

Index

Numbers and symbols

12 volt vehicle battery	156
Charge.....	156
Checking the condition.....	156
Discharge protection.....	156
Disconnecting and connecting.....	157
Fault.....	156
Safety.....	16
see 12 volt vehicle battery.....	156
12-Volt-vehicle battery	156

A

ABS	132
ACC	136
Automatic stop and start.....	136
Distance adjustment.....	137
Interruption of cruise control.....	137
Accident data recorder	189
Activation of online services	116
Adaptive Cruise Control	136
AdBlue	
Checking.....	150
functionality.....	150
Indicator light.....	151
Refilling.....	150
Safety.....	16
standard.....	150
tank capacity.....	151
Air conditioning	
see Climatronic.....	51
see Manual air conditioning.....	50
Airbag	41
Deactivating the airbags.....	41
Deactivating the front passenger airbag.....	42
Fault.....	42
Installation locations.....	41
Release.....	41
Safety.....	41
Alarm system	25
Trailer.....	25
All-season tyres	162
Ambient lighting	48
Analogue instrument cluster	54
Android Auto	
Infotainment Amundsen.....	108
Infotainment Bolero.....	86
Infotainment Swing.....	71
see digital version of the manual.....	5
Anonymous vehicle data	116
Apple CarPlay	
Infotainment Amundsen.....	108
Infotainment Bolero.....	86
Infotainment Swing.....	71

 see digital version of the manual.....5

Armrest	
Front.....	33
rear.....	33
Ashtray	178
ASR	132
Assist systems	
Driver assist.....	132
Park Assist.....	142
Safety.....	18
Automatic braking	
see Front Assist.....	133
Automatic gearbox	126
Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel.....	127
Manually switching gear with the selector lever.....	127
Automatic gearbox modes	126
Availability of the ŠKODA Connect services	115

B

Background lighting	48
Battery acid	156
Bonnet	146
Boot	168
12 volt socket.....	168
Double-sided floor covering.....	172
Fasteners.....	169
Fastening nets.....	171
Net partition.....	172
Rigid cover.....	172
Storage compartments.....	168
Trailer hitch switch.....	168
Transporting objects safely.....	18
Variable loading floor.....	172
Boot cover	172
Boot lid	30
Automatic locking.....	29
manual operation.....	29
Manually unlock.....	31
to be set to the highest position.....	30
Troubleshooting.....	30
Boot storage	
see boot lid.....	29
Brake fluid	131
Safety.....	16
Brakes	131
Handbrake.....	131
Breakdown call	122
Bulbs	46

C

Car adaptations	
Recommendations.....	182
Safety.....	15

- Cargo elements** 169
 - Central locking** 22
 - SAFE function 22
 - Central locking button** 23
 - Centre console** 11
 - Charging your phone wirelessly** 177
 - Check the vehicle before your journey** 16
 - Child lock** 26
 - Child seat** 37
 - Fastening using a belt 39
 - Grouping 38
 - i-Size 39
 - ISOFIX 39
 - Keyword child seat 37
 - on the passenger seat 37
 - Recommended child seats 38
 - Securing children properly 17
 - TOP TETHER 40
 - Types of mounting 40
 - Cigarette lighter** 178
 - Climatronic** 51
 - CNG** 153
 - Comfort flasher** 43, 44
 - COMING HOME** 45
 - Compartments** 173, 174
 - Compressed natural gas** 153
 - Control Centre**
 - Infotainment Amundsen 94
 - Infotainment Bolero 77
 - Infotainment Swing 62
 - Coolant** 148
 - Checking 148
 - Refilling 148
 - Safety 16
 - Specification 148
 - Temperature display 148
 - Troubleshooting 148
 - Warning lights 148
 - Cooling system** 51
 - Crew Protect Assist**
 - see Proactive occupant protection 141
 - Cruise control system** 135
 - Cup holder** 177
 - Cybernetic security**
 - Infotainment Amundsen 102
- D**
- Data connection** 120
 - Daylight running lights** 43
 - Deactivating the front passenger airbag** 42
 - Diesel** 152
 - Misfuelling protection 152
 - Prescribed fuel 153
 - Refilling 153
 - Requirements for refuelling 152
 - Standards 152
 - Tank capacity 153
 - troubleshooting 153
 - Digital Assistant Laura**
 - Infotainment Amundsen 92
 - Digital instrument cluster** 55, 56
 - Distribution of the cargo** 129
 - Door**
 - Opening/closing 26
 - Door protect**
 - see door protection strip 27
 - Door protection strip** 27
 - Change 27
 - Driver Alert**
 - see fatigue detection assistant 141
 - Driver's seat** 11
 - Driving data** 57
 - Reset to default 58
 - Driving in neutral** 127
 - DSR** 132
 - Dynamic cornering lights** 43
- E**
- Earth point** 157
 - Economical driving** 128
 - EDL** 132
 - Electric windows** 28
 - Activation 28
 - Force limiter 27
 - Operation 28
 - Troubleshooting 28
 - Emergency**
 - Emergency call 19
 - Using jump start cables 157
 - What to do after an accident 20
 - What to do in the event of a fire 21
 - Emergency call** 19
 - Emergency equipment** 168
 - Car jack 169
 - Tool kit 169
 - Emergency wheel** 162
 - safe driving 18
 - Engine compartment** 12
 - Coolant 148
 - Engine oil 147
 - Flap 146
 - Safety 16
 - Engine number** 186
 - Engine oil** 147
 - Changing 147
 - Checking 147
 - Indicator light 147
 - Refilling 147
 - Safety 16
 - Specification 147
 - EPC** 149
 - Equipment in the boot** 168
 - ESC** 132
 - Exhaust gas control system** 149
 - Explanations** 7
 - Exterior**

- lighting..... 43
- Exterior mirrors**..... 34
- Extinguisher**..... 168
- F**
- Fasteners in the boot**..... 169
- First aid kit**..... 168
- Flooring in the boot**..... 172
- Fog light**..... 44
- Fog lights**..... 44
- Fogged windows**..... 51, 52
- Folding table**..... 178
- Freewheel**
 - Free-wheelingSee Driving in neutral..... 127
- Front Assist**..... 133
- Front seat**
 - Electrically operated..... 32
 - Manually operated..... 31
- Front vehicle area**..... 8
- Fuel**
 - CNG..... 153
 - Diesel..... 152
 - Petrol..... 151
- Fuel filler flap**..... 150
- Fuel filter**..... 149
- Fuel tank**
 - Opening the flap..... 150
- Full LED headlights**..... 43
- Fuses**..... 158
 - In the dash panel..... 158
 - Replacing..... 158
- G**
- G-TEC (natural gas vehicle)**..... 153
- H**
- Handbrake**..... 131
- Hazard warning light system**..... 44
- Headlights**..... 45
 - Full LED..... 43
 - Headlight range control..... 44
- Headrests**..... 32
- Heated steering wheel**..... 53
- Heated windscreen**..... 53
- Heating**..... 50
- HHC**
 - see Hill Hold Control..... 132
- High-beam**
 - High-beam assist system..... 45
- High-beam assist system**..... 45, 46
- Hill Hold Control**..... 132
- Hook**
 - in interior..... 174
 - in the luggage compartment..... 169
- I**
- i-Size**..... 39
- Ice scraper**..... 10
- Ignition lock**..... 124
- Images**
 - Infotainment Amundsen..... 101
 - see digital version of the manual..... 5
- Immobilizer**..... 125
- Indicator lights**
 - Overview..... 12
- Info call**..... 122
- Infotainment Amundsen**..... 89
- Infotainment Bolero**..... 74
- Infotainment keyboard**
 - see digital version of the manual..... 5
- Infotainment Overview**
 - Infotainment Bolero..... 74
 - Infotainment Swing..... 59
- Infotainment screen**
 - Infotainment Amundsen..... 90
 - Infotainment Bolero..... 75
 - Infotainment Swing..... 60
- Infotainment settings**
 - Infotainment Amundsen..... 89
 - Infotainment Bolero..... 74
 - Infotainment Swing..... 59
- Infotainment Swing**..... 59
- Instrument cluster**
 - analogue..... 54
 - digital..... 55
 - Instrument cluster display..... 54
- Instrument cluster display**..... 54
- Interior**
 - lighting..... 47
- Interior fittings**
 - 12 volt socket..... 168, 173
 - Car park ticket holder..... 173
 - Coat hook..... 174
 - Glasses compartment..... 173
 - Make up mirror..... 173
 - Map pockets..... 174
 - Storage compartments..... 173, 174
 - Ticket holder..... 173
- Interior lighting**..... 47, 48
 - Ambient lighting..... 48
 - Operation..... 47
- Interior mirror**..... 34
- ISOFIX**
 - eyelets..... 40
 - Placement on the seat..... 39
- J**
- Jump start cables**..... 157
- K**
- Key**..... 22
- Key switch for airbag deactivation**..... 42
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag**
 - Key switch faulty..... 42
- Keyboard**

Infotainment Amundsen	91	Luggage compartment	
Infotainment Bolero	76	Storage pocket	171
Infotainment Swing	61	M	
Keyless locking (KESY)	24	Main beam	43
Kick-down	126	Management of online services	119
L		Manual air conditioning	50
Lane Assist	138	Manual gearbox	126
see Lane Assist	138	MCB	132
Lane change assist system		Media	
siehe Side Assist	139	Infotainment Amundsen	97
LEAVING HOME	45	Infotainment Bolero	79
Lever		Infotainment Swing	65
Buttons	55	Playlist	98
High-beam assist system	46	see digital version of the manual	5
Main beam	43	Mirror	
Turn signal	43	see exterior mirror	34
Windscreen wipers and washers	48	MirrorLink	
Liability for defects		Infotainment Amundsen	108
see warranty	191	Infotainment Bolero	86
Light	43	Infotainment Swing	71
Automatically switch on and switch off	43, 44	see digital version of the manual	5
Change bulbs	46	Mirrors	
Changing bulbs	46	see interior rear-view mirror	34
Clean headlights	48	Mobile Device Management	
CORNER function	43	Infotainment Amundsen	102
Driving in the opposite direction of traffic	45	Infotainment Bolero	82
Fog light	44	Infotainment Swing	67
Full LED headlights	43	MSR	132
Hazard warning light system	44	Multi-collision brake	
Headlamp flasher	43	see MCB	132
Headlight range adjustment of headlights	44	Multimedia holder	178
High-beam assist system	45	N	
Indicator light	45	Navigation	
Low beam	44	Infotainment Amundsen	110
Main beam	43	Net partition	172
Operation	43	Nets	171
Parking light	44	Notes on starting	124
Side light	44	O	
Troubleshooting	45	Oil	
Turn signal	43	see engine oil	147
Light Assist		Online services	
see high beam assist system	45	Breakdown call	122
Light switch	43	Info call	122
lightbulbs		Online Services	
Rear flashing light - change	46	Availability	115
Reversing light - change	47	Data connection	120
Lighting		Management of online services	119
Ambient lighting	48	Personalisation	119
interior	47	Remote access to the vehicle	123
outer	43	Service Scheduling	123
Lighting range	44	Shop	121
Limiter		ŠKODA Connect	115
see speed limiter	134	ŠKODA Connect application	115
Lock	22	System update	120
Locking elements		User management	117
in engine compartment	160		
Low beam	43		

- User registration and activation of the ŠKODA
 Connect services 116
 Vehicle status report 123
- Operating the vehicle**
 Use jump start cables 157
- P**
- Park Assist systems** 142
Park steering assistant 144
 Troubleshooting 146
- Parking**
 Parking aid 142
 Rear Traffic Alert 144
 Reversing camera 143
 Stop the vehicle safely! 19
- Parking aid** 142, 143
Parking brake 131
Parking light 44
ParkPilot
 see parking aid 142
Passenger seat 11
Pedestrian recognition 134
Personal data 116, 190
Personalisation 119
Petrol 151
 prescribed fuel 152
 prescribed petrol 151
 Refilling 152
 Requirements for refuelling 152
 Standards 151
 Tank capacity 152
 Troubleshooting 152
- Phonebox** 177
Power steering 34
- Practical equipment**
 12 volt socket 179
 Ashtray 178
 Cigarette lighter 178
 Cup holder 177
 Folding table 178
 Multimedia holder 178
 Storage compartment for the umbrella 176
 Storage compartment under the front seat 176
- R**
- Radiator blinds** 150
Radio
 Infotainment Amundsen 94
 Infotainment Bolero 77
 Infotainment Swing 62
 see digital version of the manual 5
- Radio systems in the vehicle** 190
Rear fog light 44
Rear seats
 Folding down 32
Rear Traffic Alert 144
Rear vehicle area 10
Rear view camera 143
- Rear View Camera**
 Operation 144
- Recirculated air mode** 51
- Refilling**
 AdBlue 150
 Coolant 148
 Diesel 153
 Engine oil 147
 Petrol 152
- Reflective vest** 168
Release 22
Remote access to the vehicle 123
- Restarting the Infotainment system**
 Infotainment Amundsen 90
 Infotainment Bolero 75
 Infotainment Swing 60
- Rights arising from defective performance**
 see warranty 191
- Roof rack** 179
 Roof load 179
 safe driving 179
- S**
- Safe driving** 18
SAFE function 22
- Safety**
 Before your journey 15
 Car adaptations 15
 Child seat 17
 Driving through water 19
 Emergency call 19
 Exiting the vehicle 19
 New brake pads 15
 New tyres 15
 Running in the engine 15
 safe driving 18
 Sensors and cameras 15
 sit properly 17
 Transport cargo and objects 18
 Transporting children 17
 Warning lights 18
 Weather conditions 19
 Webbing route 17
 What to do after an accident 20
 What to do in the event of a fire 21
- Seat belts** 36
 Adjusting the height 36
 Automatic belt retractor 36
 Belt tensioners 36
 Blocked strap 37
 correct arrangement 17
 Fastening and unfastening 36
 Reversible belt tensioner 36
 Status display 36
- Seat heating** 53
Seats 31
 Folding down 32
 Heating 53

- ISOFIX _____ 40
- sit safely _____ 17
- TOP TETHER _____ 40
- Selector lever** _____ 127
- Service events** _____ 182
 - Interval _____ 182
 - Resetting information _____ 182
 - Show service appointment _____ 182
- Service position for windscreen wiper arms** _____ 49
- Service Scheduling** _____ 123
- Service work** _____ 182
- Set the air conditioning fan speed** _____ 52
- Set tyre pressure values** _____ 166
- Setting personal data protection** _____ 116
- Shop** _____ 121
- Side Assist** _____ 139
- Side light**
 - see Parking light _____ 44
- Sliding/tilting roof**
 - electric operation of the sun blinds _____ 29
- SmartLink**
 - Infotainment Amundsen _____ 108
 - Infotainment Bolero _____ 86
 - Infotainment Swing _____ 71
 - see digital version of the manual _____ 5
- Snow chains** _____ 162
- Sockets**
 - 12-volt socket _____ 179
 - safety _____ 16
- Spare wheel** _____ 162
 - safe driving _____ 18
- Speed limit** _____ 58
 - Resetting _____ 58
 - Settings _____ 58
- Speed limit warning** _____ 58
 - Setting _____ 58
- Speed limiter** _____ 134
 - Indicator light _____ 134
- Sport Chassis Preset** _____ 128
- Start** _____ 124
- Start the engine** _____ 124
- START-STOP** _____ 125
- Starter button** _____ 124
- Steering column lock** _____ 34
- Steering wheel** _____ 33
 - Buttons / dial _____ 55, 56
 - Buttons/dial: _____ 33
 - correct position _____ 17
 - Heating _____ 53
 - Manually changing gear with the shift paddles on the steering wheel _____ 127
- Stopping the engine** _____ 124
- Storage** _____ 173, 174
- Storage pocket** _____ 171
- Sun protection** _____ 29
 - Activating sunblind operation _____ 29
 - electric operation of the sun blinds _____ 29
- Supported media files**
 - see digital version of the manual _____ 5
- Supported media sources**
 - see digital version of the manual _____ 5
- Switching low beam on automatically** _____ 43
- Switching process**
 - Manual gearbox _____ 126
- System**
 - Infotainment Amundsen _____ 89
 - Infotainment Swing _____ 59
- System update** _____ 120
- System Update**
 - Infotainment Bolero _____ 74
- T**
- Tank capacity**
 - Diesel _____ 153
 - Petrol _____ 152
- Technical data** _____ 186
- Technical specifications**
 - Dimensions _____ 187
- Telephone**
 - Infotainment Amundsen _____ 104
 - Infotainment Bolero _____ 83
 - Infotainment Swing _____ 68
- Tips for economical driving** _____ 128
- Tiptronic** _____ 127
- Tool** _____ 169
- TOP TETHER** _____ 40
 - eyelets _____ 40
- Topping up**
 - Windscreen washer fluid _____ 49
- Touch operation**
 - Infotainment Amundsen _____ 90
 - Infotainment Bolero _____ 75
 - Infotainment Swing _____ 60
- Tow hitch** _____ 179
 - Troubleshooting _____ 180
 - Vertical load _____ 181
- Tow rope** _____ 130
- Towing a trailer** _____ 129
 - Safety _____ 19
 - Trailer Stability Assist _____ 133
- Towing lug** _____ 130
- Towing the vehicle** _____ 130
- Traffic accident**
 - Data recorder _____ 189
 - Emergency call _____ 19
 - What to do after an accident _____ 20
- Traffic Sign Recognition** _____ 140
- Trailer** _____ 129
 - Alarm system _____ 25
 - Coupling and uncoupling _____ 180
 - Permissible load _____ 129
 - safe driving _____ 19
 - Swing out the tow bar and back in _____ 179
- Trailer Stability Assist** _____ 133
- Transport**
 - Roof rack _____ 179
 - Tow hitch _____ 179

- Transporting objects safely 18
- TSA**
see Trailer Stability Assist 133
- Turn signal** 43
- Type plate** 186
- Tyre pressure monitor** 166
- Tyres** 161, 162
Breakdown set 164
Labelling overview 161
Pressure 166
Snow chains 162
Tyre pressure monitor 166
Wear indicator 161
- U**
- Umbrella** 176
- Unlock** 24
- Update Infotainment**
Infotainment Amundsen 90
Infotainment Bolero 75
Infotainment Swing 60
- Update of the system and infotainment**
see digital version of the manual 5
- USB** 173, 174
- User management** 117
- User registration** 116
- V**
- Variable loading floor in the boot** 172
- Vehicle cleaning**
Exterior 184
Instructions for cleaning the interior 183
Instructions for cleaning the outer area 184
Interior 183
- Vehicle dimensions** 187
- Vehicle driving mode** 128
Eco 128
Individual 128
Normal 128
Sport 128
- Vehicle height** 187
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)** 186
- Vehicle length** 187
- Vehicle status** 58
- Vehicle status report** 123
- Vehicle width** 187
- Vest**
see reflective vest 168
- VIN**
see vehicle identification number 186
- Virtual cockpit**
see digital instrument cluster 55
- Voice control**
Infotainment Amundsen 92
- W**
- Warning lights**
Foreword 12
- Warning triangle** 168
- Warranty** 191
Mobility warranty 192
Optional Extended Warranty 192
Rights arising from defective performance 191
Warranty for new cars 191
- Waste container** 178
- Water in the fuel filter** 149
- Weight** 186
- Wheels** 161
Breakdown 162
Change 163, 164
Cover caps for the screws 167
Full wheel covers 167
Overview of tyre labelling 161
Pressure change 162
Spare wheel and emergency wheel 162
Tyre pressure 166
Tyre pressure monitor 166
Wear indicator 161
- Wi-Fi**
Infotainment Amundsen 106
Infotainment Bolero 86
Infotainment Swing 71
see digital version of the manual 5
- Window** 28
heating 53
mechanical operation 27
- Windscreen washer fluid**
How is the washer fluid refilled? 49
Level too low 49
- Windscreen washer system**
see windscreen wiper and washer 48
- Windscreen wiper and washer**
Refill windscreen washer fluid 49
Windscreen washer fluid level too low 49
- Windscreen wipers and washers** 48
automatic rear window wiping 49
automatic wiping 49
Replace the windscreen wiper blade 49
Unfold the windscreen wiper arms 49
- Winter tyres** 162
- X**
- XDL +** 132